

OWNER'S MANUAL  
**OPEL GRANDLAND** /





INTRODUCTION.....	5	1
GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE.....	8	2
DASHBOARD INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROL.....	66	3
INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM.....	95	4
STARTING & OPERATING.....	119	5
ADVANCED DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS.....	152	6
IN CASE OF EMERGENCY.....	193	7
MAINTENANCE AND VEHICLE CARE .....	210	8
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.....	238	9
CUSTOMER INFORMATION .....	246	10
INDEX.....	257	11

# CONTENTS

<b>Introduction.....</b>	<b>5</b>	Sunroof .....	59	Towing Recommendation.....	151
Link to Company App and Website.....	5	Interior Storage and Features .....	60	<b>Advanced Driving</b>	
How To Use This Manual.....	6	<b>Dashboard Instruments And Control.....</b>	<b>66</b>	<b>Assistance Systems.....</b>	<b>152</b>
Symbols Key.....	6	Instrument Panel Overview .....	66	General Information.....	152
Safety Messages.....	6	Instrument Cluster .....	67	Speed Control Assistance System.....	154
Propulsion Type .....	6	Outside temperature.....	72	Collision Avoidance Assistance System.....	161
<b>Getting To Know Your Vehicle.....</b>	<b>8</b>	Warning Lights - Indicators - Messages.....	72	Vehicle stability assistance system.....	168
Keys .....	8	Vehicle messages.....	85	Braking Performance Assistance System.....	169
Central locking system .....	9	Climate Controls.....	86	Lane Assistance System.....	170
Vehicle Security System.....	12	Displays.....	91	Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System....	178
Doors.....	15	<b>Infotainment System.....</b>	<b>95</b>	Driver's Attention Assistance System.....	186
Windows.....	21	Introduction about Infotainment System.....	95	Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System....	188
Mirrors.....	24	Radio .....	104	Utility Assistance Features.....	189
Head restraints .....	25	Multimedia System .....	107	<b>In Case Of Emergency.....</b>	<b>193</b>
Seats.....	27	<b>Starting &amp; Operating.....</b>	<b>119</b>	Hazard Warning Lights.....	193
Seat Belts .....	34	Starting And Stopping The Engine.....	119	Assist and SOS .....	193
Airbag System.....	36	Brakes.....	123	Warning Triangle.....	195
Child restraints.....	40	Transmission.....	127	Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing .....	196
Steering Wheel .....	50	Drive Modes.....	130	Tire Repair Toolkit .....	200
Wipers and Washers Control Stalk .....	51	Engine Exhaust .....	131	Jump Starting .....	203
Rear Window Wiper And Washer .....	52	Fuel .....	132		
Exterior Lights .....	53	Charging.....	135		
Interior Lights .....	58	Vehicle Loading.....	146		
Lighting Features.....	58	Trailer Towing .....	147		

Towing ..... 207

## **Maintenance And Vehicle**

### **Care .....210**

General Information ..... 210

Scheduled Servicing ..... 212

Recommended Fluids,  
Lubricants, and Parts ..... 216

Engine Compartment ..... 217

Vehicle Maintenance ..... 225

Fuses ..... 227

Bulb Replacement ..... 227

Tires and Wheels ..... 227

Vehicle Storage ..... 232

Bodywork-Exterior Care ..... 233

Interior Care ..... 235

### **Technical Specifications.....238**

Vehicle Identification..... 238

Vehicle Data ..... 239

Engine Fluids and Lubricants..... 244

Capacities..... 244

Wheels and Tires..... 245

### **Customer Information ..... 246**

Declaration Of Conformity ..... 246



# INTRODUCTION

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy. This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Additionally, video tutorials for some vehicle functions can be viewed on the Infotainment Display.

Some functions are only operational when ignition is switched on, when combustion engine is running or when electric engine is ready.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit contact a qualified workshop that has the

required technical information, skills and equipment. We recommend your Opel Service Partner.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

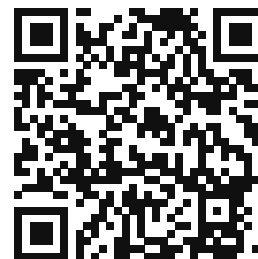
## Your Opel Team

## Link to Company App and Website

You can access and download the full digital version of the Owner's Manual in the myOpel webportal or on Service Box using the following link:

<https://public-service-box.opel.com/OVddb/OV/>.

For direct access to the Owner's Manual, use the QR code below.



You may also find more details and information in the myOpel app. Installation of the app with the following QR code:



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical Specification".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.

- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

### Symbols Key



Environmental protection feature



Danger, Warning, Caution notes



Note

Page references are indicated with ⇒.  
⇒ means "see page".

Page references and index entries refer to the indented headings given in the section table of content.

### Safety Messages

#### DANGER

Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury.

Disregarding this information may endanger life.

#### WARNING

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury.

Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

#### CAUTION

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle.

Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

## Propulsion Type

### Internal Combustion Engine Vehicle (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine - diesel or petrol - only.

### Hybrid 48 V Vehicle (MHEV)

A Hybrid 48 V vehicle is powered by both an internal combustion engine and an electric motor, which can operate

together or independently depending on driving conditions.

The electric motor is supplied by a 48 unit battery that is charged exclusively through regenerative braking and energy recovery during deceleration. The vehicle can be propelled by the electric motor alone for short distances and at low speeds.

## **Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**

A PHEV is propelled by an internal combustion engine and one or two electric motor. Internal combustion engine and electric motor can operate together or alternatively, depending on driving conditions and driving style. The high voltage battery can be charged while the vehicle is parked using the provided charging cable. Additionally, it is charged through regenerative braking and energy recovery during deceleration.

## **Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)**

A BEV is propelled exclusively by an electric motor only.

The high voltage battery can be charged while the vehicle is parked using the provided charging cable. Additionally, it is charged through regenerative braking and energy recovery during deceleration.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

### Keys

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

#### ⚠ DANGER

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

### Radio Remote Control Function



Locking the vehicle



locks or unlocks the tailgate, the fuel filler flap and all doors or the tailgate only



Unlocking the vehicle

Enables operation of the following functions via the use of the remote control buttons:

- central locking system ⇨ 9
- anti-theft locking system ⇨ 9
- anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 9
- tailgate unlocking ⇨ 9
- power windows ⇨ 21
- mirrors folding ⇨ 24
- Vehicle locator lighting ⇨ 59

### Electronic Key System

The key contains an antenna that is detected by the vehicle and enables a keyless operation of the following functions (depending on version):

- central locking system ⇨ 9
- power tailgate ⇨ 18
- starting the vehicle ⇨ 119

For reasons of security, the electronic key may be equipped with a motion sensor. If so, starting the vehicle is not possible when the electronic key has not been moved for a certain time.

When trying to start the vehicle, a corresponding message appears in the cluster. Move the electronic key and try to start the vehicle again.

Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control ⇄ 8

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

## Central locking system

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks and opens the respective door.

### **i** NOTE

In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.


### **i** NOTE

A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened. A precondition is that the

setting is activated in the vehicle customization


## Automatic locking after driving off

This system allows automatic locking as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h.

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the automatic locking does not take place. This is signaled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of  in the cluster, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

### Activation or deactivation



With the ignition on, press  and a corresponding message is displayed. The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

## Automatic re-lock after unlocking

This feature automatically re-locks the vehicle a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided vehicle has not been opened.

## Selective unlocking of cabin and load compartment

Unlocking mode can be set in the Infotainment screen. Multiple settings are selectable:

- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the driver's door handle. ⇄ 15
- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the passenger's door handle or by pressing the tailgate button.
- Only the tailgate will be unlocked by pressing the tailgate button.

1

2

3

4

5


6

7

8

9

10

Graphic Infotainment screen: Switch on ignition. Press  more than 2 seconds. An audible signal is given and a message is displayed in the Graphic Infotainment screen.


Color Infotainment screen: Select the relevant setting in the Vehicle customization.

### Central locking button

Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap from inside the passenger compartment. Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap from inside the passenger compartment.



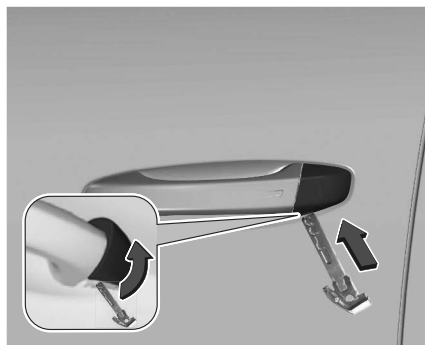
Press  to lock. The LED in the button illuminates.

Press  again to unlock. The LED in the button extinguishes.

### Operation with the key in case of a central locking system fault

In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control / electronic key battery is discharged, the vehicle can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

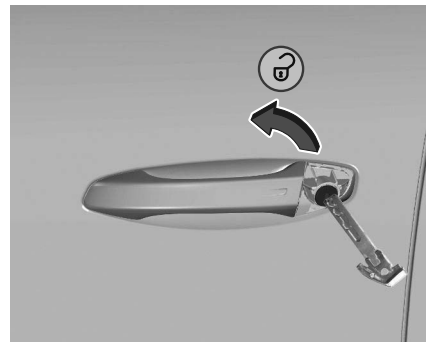
#### Manual unlocking



The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.

To remove the cap extract the built-in mechanical key blade from the housing. Insert the

key into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upwards.

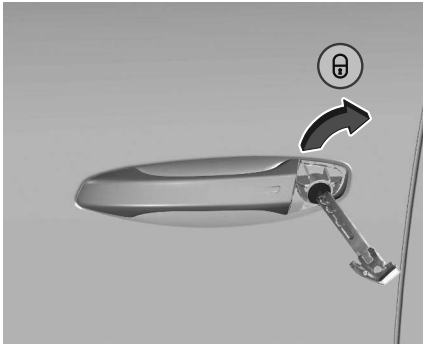


Insert the key into the lock cylinder and turn it anti-clockwise.

After locking, cover the lock cylinder with the cap: insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side.

By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated. The other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle. The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked.

## Manual Locking

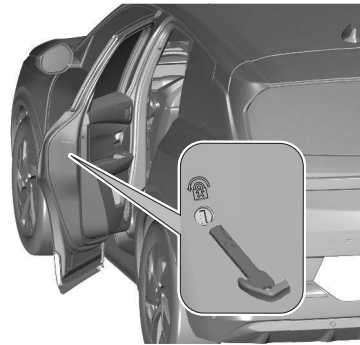


Manually lock the left front door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be locked

## Child Locks

### WARNING

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.





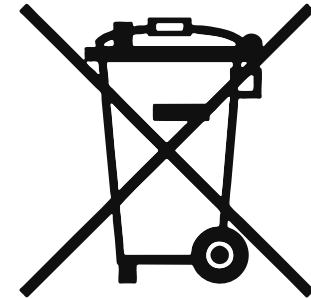
Turn the red child lock in the rear doors to the horizontal position by using a key. The door cannot be opened from the inside.

To deactivate, turn the child lock to the vertical position.

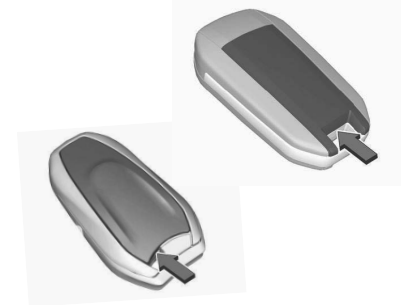
## Battery Replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced.

In the event of a discharged battery,  illuminates and a warning message is displayed in the cluster. Cluster  67.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. To unclip the cover, insert a small screwdriver between the back cover and the remote control.
2. Remove the back cover from the remote control.
3. Extract the flat battery from its location.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

4. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
5. Clip the cover in place.

### Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- The battery voltage is too high.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time. Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 12.

### Replacement keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag. The key number must

be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobilizer system.

Locks ⇨ 233

Starting the engine ⇨ 119

Remote control function ⇨ 8

The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Wheel changing ⇨ 198

### Emergency Key

Using the remote control built-in key.



- Slide the button (1) and pull out the key stub (2).

### ⚠ WARNING

Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

### Lock Cylinders

Designed to free-wheel if they are forcefully rotated without the correct key or if the correct key is not fully inserted. To reset, insert the correct key only half way and turn cylinder until its slot is vertical, remove key then re-insert it. If the cylinder still free-wheels, insert the key only half way and turn the key through 180° and repeat operation.

## Vehicle Security System

### Anti-Theft Locking System



The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated. Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system.

**⚠ WARNING**

Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button. The horn remains operational.

**Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.**

For vehicles equipped with the Proximity Keyless Entry and Start system, a double audible signal indicates that the vehicle is not deadlocked.

**Activating**

Press **🔒** on the radio remote control or (with Passive Entry) touch the sensor of the driver's door handle twice rapidly.

**Anti-theft Alarm System**

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system.

It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, hood
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment
- vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised
- ignition

If the sunroof remains open, the passenger compartment is not monitored.

During temperature preconditioning, the passenger compartment and the vehicle inclination are not monitored.

**Activation**

All doors, the load compartment and the engine compartment must be closed.

The system is self-activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

If a door, the tailgate or the hood is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked. However, the anti-theft alarm is self-activated after 45 seconds.

**📘 NOTE**

The automatic vehicle locking function does not activate the anti-theft alarm system.

To activate the anti-theft alarm system, lock the vehicle by using the radio remote control or by touching the sensor on the driver's door handle.

Central locking system ➡ 9

**📘 NOTE**

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers and open windows, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

**Activation Without Monitoring Of Passenger Compartment And Vehicle Inclination**

Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals and because movements

1

2

3

4

5

6

7



8

9


10

could trigger the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train. Close tailgate, hood, windows.




1. Press . LED in the button  illuminates for a maximum of ten minutes.
2. Close doors.
3. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

### Indication


LED in the  button flashes if the anti-theft alarm system is activated. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

### Deactivation

Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing  on the key deactivates the anti-theft alarm system. The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the builtin key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

### Alarm

When triggered, the alarm siren sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.


The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing  or switching on the ignition.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning lights. They will flash quickly four times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

If the battery has been reconnected (e.g. after maintenance work), wait for ten minutes to restart the engine.

### Fault

If the LED in the button  illuminates permanently when switching on the ignition, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Locking the vehicle without activation of the anti-theft alarm Lock the vehicle by locking the front door with the key. If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- The battery voltage is too high.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 9.

## Locking the vehicle without activation of the anti-theft alarm

Lock the vehicle by locking the front door with the key.

## Immobilizer

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobilizer is activated automatically.

### **i** NOTE

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

### **i** NOTE

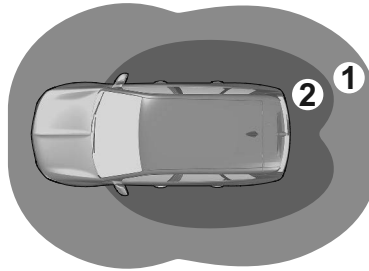
The immobilizer does not lock the doors. Always lock the vehicle after leaving it ⇨ 9

Switch on the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 13

## Doors

### Passive Entry

Passive entry allows unlocking of the vehicle simply by approaching it while carrying the Electronic Key.





**Zone 1:** welcome lighting on approaching the vehicle (between 2 and 5 meters from the vehicle).

**Zone 2:** automatic unlocking on approaching the vehicle (between 1 and 2 meters from the vehicle).

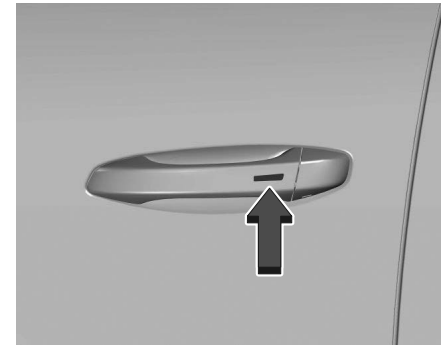
### **i** NOTE

If the electronic key remains for more than 15 minutes in zone 1, automatic unlocking is deactivated.

Unlock the vehicle by pressing  or  on the remote control or touch the sensor of the driver's door handle to unlock the vehicle. Automatic locking and unlocking is activated again.

Unlocking/Locking behaviour can be customized in the touchscreen display ⇨ 9

## Unlocking



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

Pass a hand behind the door handle of a front door to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate button.

### Locking

Press marking on the front door handles.

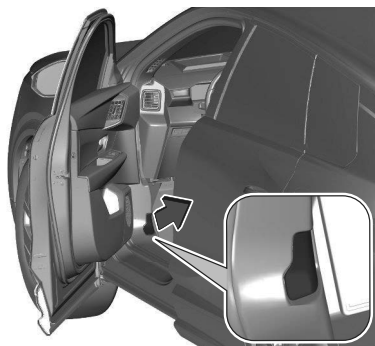
Entire vehicle will be locked.

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted and a warning chime sounds. Keep the hand behind the door handle or keep the tailgate button pressed to close the windows.

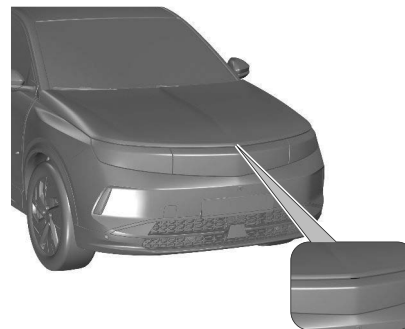
### Unlocking and opening the tailgate

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened hands-free by pushing the button under the tailgate moulding when the electronic key is in range. The doors remain locked ➡ 18

### Hood Opening



- Open the left-hand front door.
- Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you to unlock the hood.
- Release the leave fully.
- Pull the interior release lever towards you second time to unlock the safety catch.



- Raise the hood.
- Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the hood open.

### Closing

- Lower the hood and release it near the end of its travel.
- Check the locking.

### **WARNING**

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

## Tailgate Operation

### General hints for operating tailgate

#### DANGER

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

#### CAUTION

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

#### CAUTION

Do not install any carrier onto the tailgate.

#### NOTE

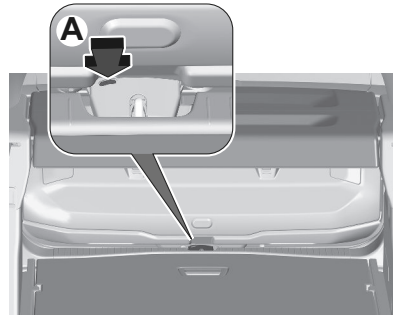
At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this case lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

#### Back-up release

To manually unlock the trunk in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

#### Unlocking

- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the trunk.



1. Insert a small screwdriver into hole A of the lock to unlock the trunk.
2. Move the latch to the left.

#### Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the trunk will remain locked.

#### 12V Power Outlets

- To connect a 12V accessory (maximum power: 120 W), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adapter.
- Switch on the ignition.

#### WARNING

The connection of an electrical device not approved by the Manufacturer, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

#### Trunk light

It comes on automatically when the trunk is opened and goes off automatically when the tailgate is closed. The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

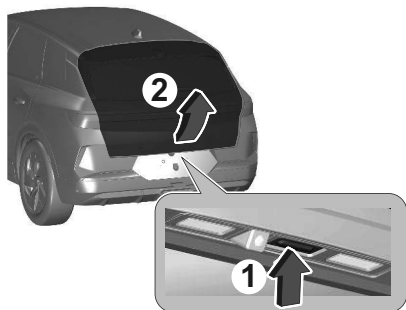
9

10

- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

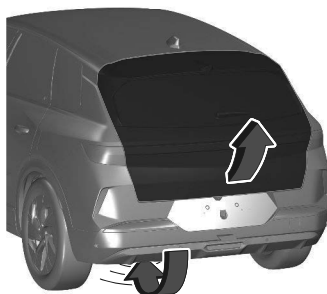
## Manual Operation

### Opening



1. Press the button behind the lower center edge of the tailgate.
2. Open the tailgate.

### Closing



Use the interior handle.  
Central locking system ⇨ 9

### Power tailgate

#### ⚠ WARNING

Take care when operating the power tailgate. Risk of injury, particularly to children.  
Keep a close watch on the movable tailgate when operating.  
Ensure that nothing becomes trapped during operating and no one is standing within the moving area.

#### NOTE

The power tailgate will be deactivated if a trailer is connected to the socket of the trailer hitch.

The power tailgate can be operated by:

- Pressing

on the electronic key. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.

- Hands-free operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper.
- The tailgate button under the exterior tailgate moulding and C in the open tailgate.
- Pressing twice next to the steering wheel.



The tailgate can be operated when the vehicle is stationary and P engaged, or if the driver is sitting in the car, engine running, D is engaged, but the car is stationary and the driver pressing the brake. The power tailgate can be adjusted in the Infotainment screen.  
Vehicle customization ⇨ 94

**i NOTE**

Operating the power tailgate does not operate the central locking system. To open the tailgate with the button on the electronic key, or with the tailgate button or via hands-free operation, it is not necessary to unlock the vehicle. A precondition is that the electronic key is outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the tailgate. Do not leave the electronic key in the load compartment. Lock the vehicle after closing if it was unlocked previously.

Central locking system → 9

**Operation with the electronic key**

Press and hold  to open or close the tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate,  must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.

**Hands-free operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper**

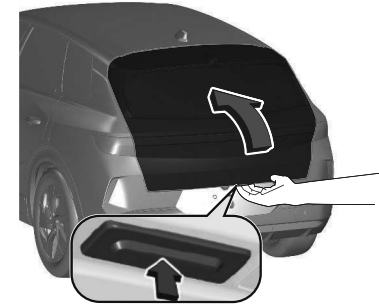
To open or close the tailgate, move the foot back and forth in the area shown in the illustration. Do not hold the foot longer or move too slow below the bumper. The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the tailgate. The turn lights will flash to indicate the power tailgate movement. The hands-free operation can be adjusted in the Infotainment screen.

Vehicle customization → 94

**⚠ DANGER**

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during handsfree

operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

**Operation with the tailgate button under the exterior tailgate molding**

To open the tailgate, press the tailgate button under the tailgate moulding until the tailgate starts to move. If the vehicle is locked, the electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the tailgate.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

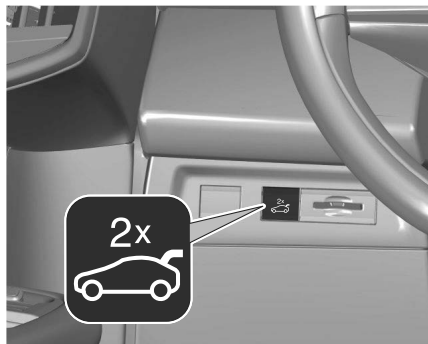
9

10



To close, press  in the open tailgate until the tailgate starts to move.




### Operation with the button next to the steering wheel



Press  twice to open the tailgate.

### Stop or change direction of movement


To stop movement of the tailgate immediately:

- press  once on the electronic key, or
- press the tailgate button under the exterior tailgate moulding, or
- press  on the open tailgate, or
- press  next to the steering wheel.

Pressing one of the switches again will reverse the direction of movement.

### Memorizing an opening height

To memorize a desired opening height, move the tailgate to the desired position and press one of the following buttons for more than three seconds:

-  in the open tailgate
- the button under the tailgate moulding

The adjusted memorization will be confirmed by a chime. A new memorization cancels the previous one.

### NOTE

Adjusting opening height should be programmed at ground level.

### Safety function


If the power tailgate encounters an obstacle during opening or closing, the direction of movement will automatically be reversed slightly.

Multiple obstacles in one power cycle will deactivate the function. In this case, close or open the tailgate manually to reactivate the power tailgate.

The power tailgate has pinch sensors on the side edges. If the sensors detect obstacles between tailgate and chassis, the tailgate will open, until it is activated again or closed manually.

The safety function is indicated by a warning chime.

Remove all obstacles before resuming normal power operation.

If the vehicle is equipped with factory-fitted towing equipment and a trailer is electrically connected, the power tailgate can only be opened with the tailgate button or closed with  in the open tailgate. Ensure that there are no obstacles in the moving area.

## Overload

If the power tailgate is repeatedly operated at short intervals, the function is disabled for some time. Move tailgate manually into end position to reset the system.

## Windows

### Power windows

#### WARNING

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows. Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them.

Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on the ignition to operate the power windows.



Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

### Safety function

If the window glass encounters resistance of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

## Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

## Child safety system for rear windows



Press the button to deactivate the rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press again.

## Closing windows from outside

The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.

1

2

3

4

5

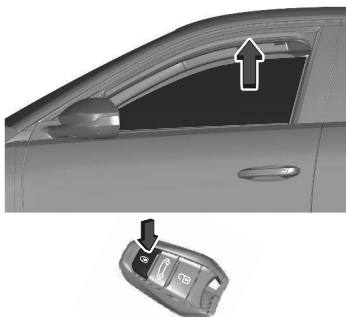
6

7

8

9

10



Press and hold  to close the windows.

Release the button to stop window movement.

If the windows are fully closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice. This feature also closes the sunroof + sunshade if open.

### NOTE

Opening via remote is not supported to avoid unintended opening.

## Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

## Initializing the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed on the cluster. Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull the switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push the switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.
6. Close the window completely by pulling the switch again.

## Fault

In some circumstances, the power windows will be opened repeatedly or may not operate correctly. Proceed as follows:

1. Close the doors.

2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Pull the switch three times in less than ten seconds to trigger the safety function.
4. The safety function is not active anymore. Pull the switch a fourth time until the window is completely closed.
5. Release the switch and pull the switch again for at least one second.
6. Open the window completely by pushing the switch.
7. Close the window completely by pulling the switch again.

## Windshield

### Windshield stickers



Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windshield in the area of the interior mirror. Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice. Otherwise, the detection zone of the rain sensor / light sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

➡ 51

## Windshield replacement

### ⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windshield replacement is performed accurately according to Manufacturer specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from these systems.

## Safety function

If the window glass encounters resistance of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

## Heated windshield



Press the button to activate the function.

The heating works only with freezing outside temperatures and switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

## Heated rear window



Press the button to activate the function.

The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature. The external mirrors are also heated.

## Sun visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swiveled to the side to prevent dazzling.

If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## Mirrors

### Convex shape

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

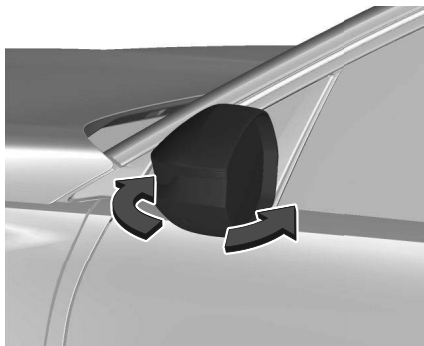
### Electric adjustment



Select the relevant exterior mirror by turning the control. Then swivel the control to adjust the selected mirror.

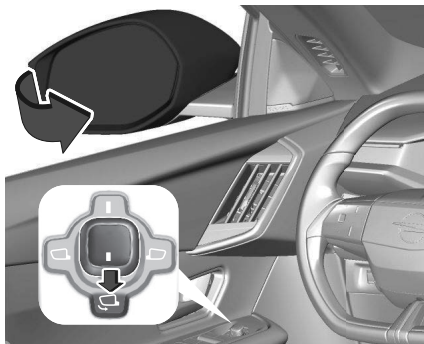
### Folding mirrors


The mirrors can be manually folded in/out to reduce the width of the vehicle.



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

### Manual Electric Folding



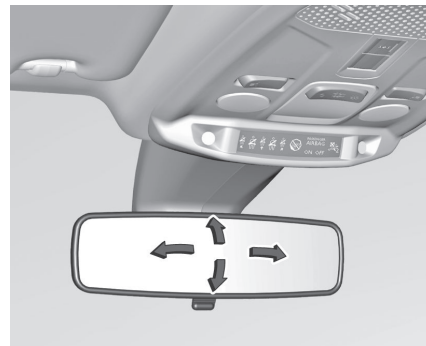
To fold or unfold both exterior mirrors, select the folding function by turning the control to .

If an electrically folded mirror is manually unfolded, only the other mirror will be unfolded electrically.

### Automatic Electric Folding

When the vehicle is unlocked, the mirrors swing to their normal mounting position. When the vehicle is locked, the mirrors are folded down.

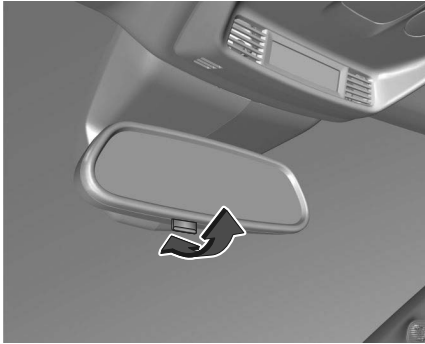
### Interior Rear-View Mirror



### Interior mirror adjustment

To adjust the mirror, move the mirror housing in the desired direction.

## Manual Anti-Dazzle



To reduce dazzle, pull the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

## Automatic Anti-dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced, when driving in the dark.


## Parking Assist

This function automatically tilts the mirrors downwards to assist with parking maneuvers in reverse gear. With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.

The mirrors tilt at different angles. If necessary, the mirrors can be tilt additionally.

The mirror glasses return to their original positions:

- a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear
- once the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h
- when the engine is switched off

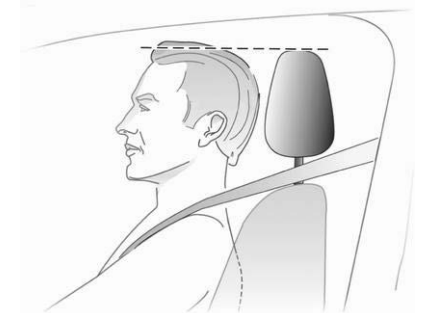
The function can be activated or deactivated in the settings app  in the Infotainment screen.

## Head restraints

### Head Restraints Position

#### WARNING

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.



The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

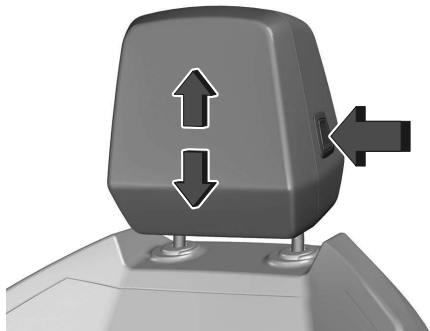
8

9

10

## Front Head Restraints

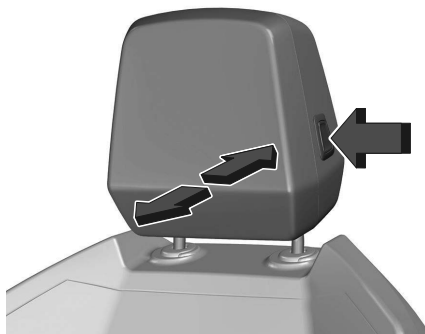
### Height Adjustment



Press release button, adjust height, engage.

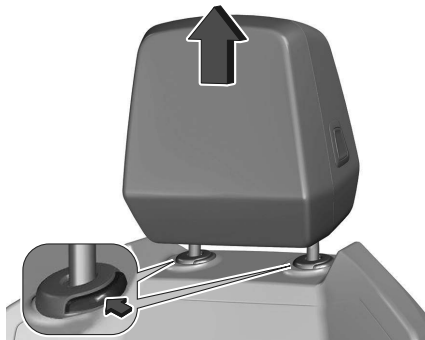
### Longitudinal Adjustment

Pull the headrest to adjust forward, press button and push to adjust backwards.



### Removal

Press catch, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.



### Refitting

1. Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest
2. Push the head restraint fully down
3. Adjust the height of the head restraint

## Rear Head Restraints

### Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

### Removal

E.g. when using a child restraint system  
⇨ 40.

Pull the head restraint upwards, press the catch to release and pull the head restraint out.

### Refitting

1. Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest
2. Push the head restraint fully down
3. Adjust the height of the head restraint

## Seats

### Front Seat Position

#### WARNING

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

#### DANGER

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

#### WARNING

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.



#### WARNING

Never store any objects under the seats.



- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when fully pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set the seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and on instrument cluster. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between

shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.

- Adjust the seat and the steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel  50.
- Adjust the head restraint  25.
- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

### Manual Front Seats Adjustment

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## Longitudinal adjustment



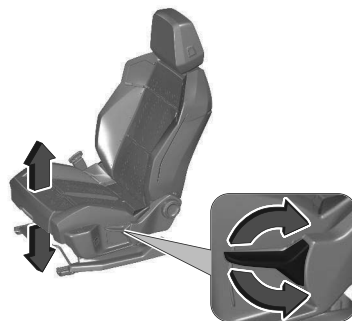
Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

## Backrest inclination



Rotate the wheel forwards or backwards to recline the seat.

## Seat height



## Lever pumping motion

- Up : raises the seat
- Down : lowers the seat

## Lumbar Support

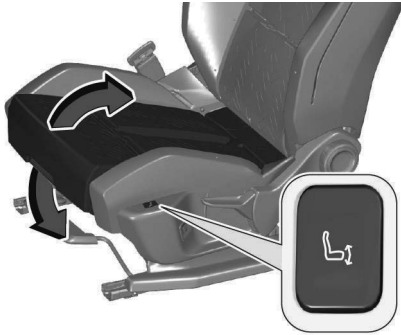


Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Press and hold the front or rear of the switch to increase or decrease the lumbar support.

Press and hold the top or bottom of the switch to raise or lower the lumbar support.

## Seat Angle



Press and hold the front or rear of the button to adjust the angle.

## Power Front Seat Adjustment

### ⚠ WARNING

Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped. Keep a close watch on the seats when adjusting them. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Never store objects beneath a power seat. Ensure that there are no objects blocking the moving area. Risk of damage to the controls.

### Longitudinal adjustment



- Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

## Backrest Angle



- Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

## Cushion Height and Angle



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

- Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

### Lumbar support

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

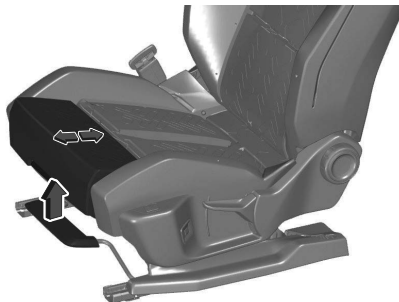


- Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.



- ⋮ Press to access seat app in infotainment screen where adjustment of seat bolsters can be made.

### Thigh support



Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

### Memory Settings

#### Driver memory settings

Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorized, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.

It records the electric adjustments made to the seat and door mirrors. This also takes into account the electric settings for the extended head-up display.



## Using buttons 1/2/M

- Enter the vehicle and switch the ignition on.
- Adjust the seat, the door mirrors and the extended head-up display.
- Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorization. Memorizing a new position cancels the previous position.

## Recalling a stored position

### **WARNING**

While the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

## With the ignition on or engine running

- Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal sounds when adjustment is complete. You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving. The recalling of stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

## Comfort entry function

The Comfort entry function makes it easier to get in and out of the vehicle. After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the front seat moves backwards automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry into the vehicle. When switching on the ignition, the front seat moves forwards to the stored driving position.



It is configured in the **Settings > Vehicle** touch screen application.

## Heated Seats


### Activation/Deactivation

Press the button in the center of the seat adjustment control or press the climate control shortcut below the Infotainment screen to access the app. In the **Seats** touch screen application



select the **Heating Functions** tab.

- Select the driver or passenger seat.

The corresponding page is displayed with the last memorized settings. If the settings are suitable, press  to activate/deactivate the function in the **Seats** application. If no action is taken, the display returns to its initial state. The function status is not memorized when the ignition is switched off. Seat heating will always start at level "3" (High) when initially activated and you can reduce to "2" or "1".

## Changing settings

- In the **Heating Functions** page, select the relevant seat.
- Select an intensity from the three preset levels: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High). The settings are memorized when the ignition is switched off.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied. Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible. When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off, reducing electrical consumption

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

in turn decreases energy consumption.

### **WARNING**

Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.


There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).


To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

## Ventilated Seats



Adjust the ventilation to the desired intensity by pressing  for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the selected intensity.


The settings are memorized when the ignition is switched off. The ventilation can be adjusted in the seat options app in the Infotainment screen. Touch  to activate or deactivate the ventilation. Adjust the ventilation to the desired intensity by touching the control indicator on the screen. The driver seat and the passenger seat can be adjusted independently.

## Massage Seats


System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start.

### Activation/Deactivation

 In the **Seats** touch screen application, select the **Massage** tab.

- Select the driver or passenger seat. The corresponding page is displayed with the last memorized settings.

 If the settings are suitable, press to activate/deactivate the function in the **Seats** application.

If no action is taken, the display returns to its initial state.

The function status is not memorized when the ignition is switched off.

### Changing settings

- In the **Message** page, select the seat concerned.
- Select a massage intensity from the three preset levels: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).
- Select another type of massage from those offered.

The modifications are taken into account immediately and memorized when the ignition is switched off. Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes at rest. The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle.

The function can also be changed in the widget area on the passenger side of the center screen.

Information Display ⇨ 91

Otherwise, the seat app can be directly opened via the button on the side of the seat.

## Rear Seats

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

### ⚠ WARNING

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

Folding backrests ⇨ 33.

## Folding Rear Seats

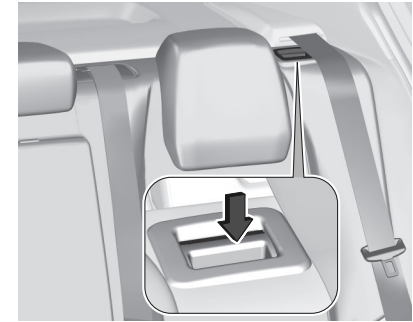
### Folding Left Or Right Backrest



Pull the release lever and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion. To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly. Make sure that the belts are positioned correctly and stay clear of the folding area.

### ⚠ WARNING

First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks near the release levers are no longer visible.

### ⚠ WARNING

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

### Center Backrest

- Check in advance that the rear armrest is not folded down and that the center head restraint is not raised.

1

2

3

4

5

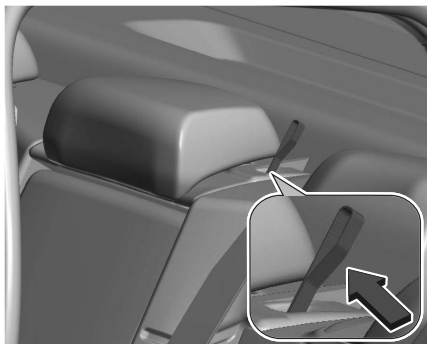
6

7

8

9

10



- From inside the passenger compartment or from the trunk, pull on the strap to release.
- Fold the backrest onto the seat cushion.
- When repositioning, lift up the backrest fully until it locks.

### Heating

The rear seats heating can be turned on or off using the capacitive touch switches located on the rear panel of the center console.




## Seat Belts



The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

### WARNING

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

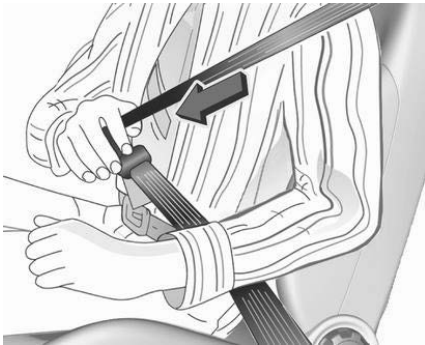
Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time. Child restraint system  40. Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality. Have damaged components replaced. After an accident, have the seat belts and triggered seat belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

### NOTE

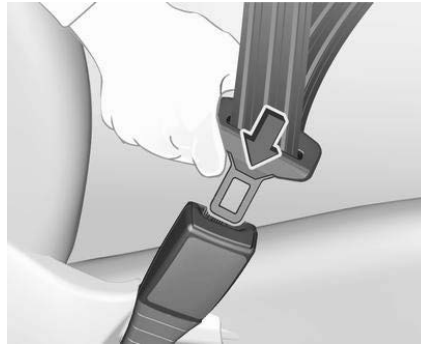
Make sure that the seat belts are neither damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects nor trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the seat belt retractors.

**i NOTE**

Use the belt buckle intended for the respective seat belt when fastening in order to ensure proper functionality.

**Three-point seat belt****Fasten**

Withdraw the seat belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt lies across the shoulder and fits tightly to the body while driving.

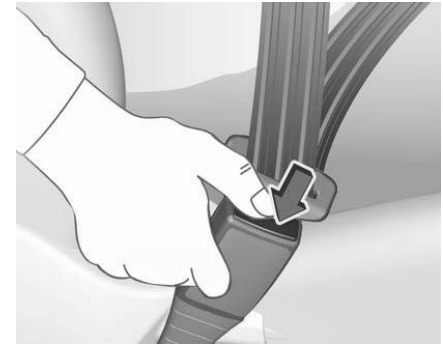


Loose or bulky clothing prevents the seat belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the seat belt and your body.

**⚠ WARNING**

The seat belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder ➡ 36.  
Height adjustment if applicable.

**Unfasten**

To release seat belt, press red button on seat belt buckle and guide the seat belt back.

**Using seat belts while pregnant**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**⚠ WARNING**

The lap seat belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

**Belt Pretensioners**

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts are tightened by seat belt pretensioners.

**⚠ WARNING**

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of seat belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

The deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of the control indicator. Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

**ℹ NOTE**

Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

**Seat Belt Reminder**

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated by a control indicator for the respective seat in the overhead console.

**Belt Force Limiters**

Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the seat belt during a collision.

**Airbag System**

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment. When triggered, the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

**⚠ WARNING**

Adding accessories that change the vehicle frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

**⚠ WARNING**

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

**i NOTE**

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the center console. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

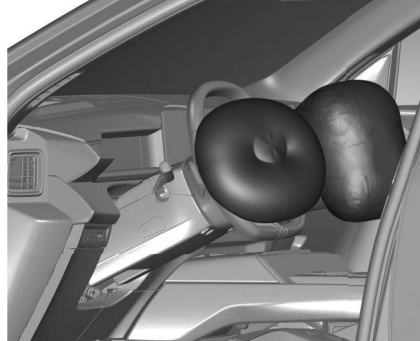
Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials. Have damaged covers replaced by a workshop. Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the paneling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced. Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

**Front airbags system**

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one on the cluster on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a

certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

**⚠ WARNING**

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position. Fasten the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

**Lateral Airbags**

The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest.

This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

**i NOTE**

Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

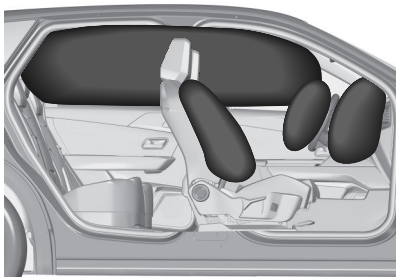
9

10

## Curtain Airbags

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

### WARNING


The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without

coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.

## Airbag deactivation



The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table.


The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active. The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the passenger side of the cluster.

Child Restraint Installation Locations  
 42




Use the ignition key to choose the position:

**OFF** : front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision, control indicator **OFF**  illuminates continuously in the center console.

**ON** : front passenger airbag is active

### NOTE

After turning the key-operated switch to position **OFF**  keep on turning towards this position until key is removed.

### DANGER

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table. Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.



If the control indicator ON illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If the control indicator OFF illuminates after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately. Consult a workshop immediately if neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.



### ⚠ DANGER

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrich-

tung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.

FR: NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.

ES: NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.

IT: NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## Child restraints

### General Recommendations

#### WARNING

When carrying children in the vehicle, you must install them in a suitable seat. **Never carry a child on your lap.**

#### WARNING

An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Make sure to comply with the instructions hereinafter and the ones provided with the child seat.

#### NOTE

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 years old or less than 1.5 meters tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their size or weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Children aged 15 months or less must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.** The use of "rearward facing" seats is recommended for children until the age of 3.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**

#### WARNING

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials. A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

#### NOTE

##### Seatbelts

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilize it.

When installing a child seat on a rear seat, ensure that the seat does not interfere with the operation of the seatbelt on the rear center seat. Ensure that the seatbelt is properly positioned and tighten it or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

#### WARNING

##### Headrests

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest or a Top Tether system on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint

once the child seat has been removed.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### Additional protections

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

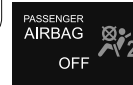
As a safety measure, do not leave:

- A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
- A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

## Child Restraint Installation on a Front Seat

### ⚠ WARNING

The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward-facing child seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.



### ⚠ WARNING

The front passenger airbag must be activated when installing a forward-facing child seat.



### i NOTE

Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest and fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.**



1

2

3

4

5

6

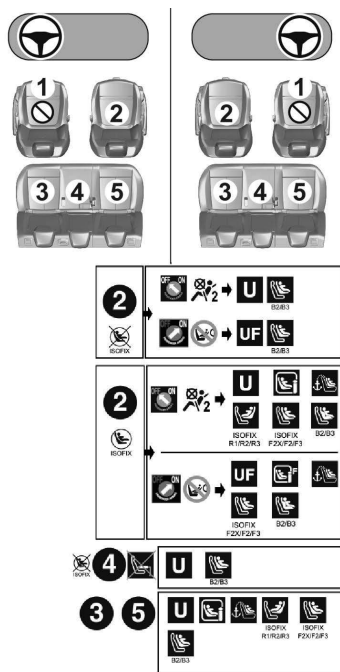
7

8

9

10

## Child Restraint Installation Locations



### Key



Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.



Front passenger airbag **deactivated**.



Front passenger airbag **activated**.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "**rearward facing**" and/or "**forward facing**" (**U**) for groups **0, 0+, 1, 2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 40 to 150 cm in size.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing"** (**UF**) for groups **1, 2** and **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.



Seat position authorized for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.



Seat position authorized for the installation of a "**forward facing**" **i-Size** child seat



Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.



Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorizing the installation of an **universal ISOFIX child seat**.



Presence of a TOP TETHER anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorizing the installation of a "**forward facing**" **universal ISOFIX child seat**.



"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX** large size child seat

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10



"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers.**
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.



**Booster** child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster seat.**
- **B3: full width booster seat.**



Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table "**Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats**".



Seat position authorized for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.

**ISOFIX** "carrycot" type child seat:



- **L1:** left-hand facing.
- **L2:** right-hand facing.

In compliance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) as well as the largest ISOFIX and i-Size child seats on seat positions equipped with ISOFIX mountings in the vehicle.

Yes:                Suitable for fitment of the designated category of the child restraint system.

No:                 Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of the child restraint system.

## Summary table for installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats.

	Seat numbers					
	Front seats <sup>(b)</sup>		Rear seats <sup>(b)</sup> row 2			
	1	2	3	4	5	
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" <sup>(c)</sup>	Activated "ON" <sup>(d)</sup>			
Position compatible with a <b>universal</b> <sup>(a)</sup> child seat <b>Rearward Facing</b> <sup>(e)</sup>	no	yes <sup>(g)(h)</sup>	no	yes	yes <sup>(i)</sup>	yes
Position compatible with a <b>universal</b> <sup>(a)</sup> child seat <b>Forward Facing</b> <sup>(f)</sup>	no	yes <sup>(g)(h)</sup>		yes	yes <sup>(i)</sup>	yes
Position compatible with an <b>i-Size</b> child seat <b>Rearward Facing</b>	no	no <sup>(j)</sup> / yes <sup>(k)</sup>	no	yes	no	yes
Position compatible with an <b>i-Size</b> child seat <b>Forward Facing</b>	no	no <sup>(j)</sup> / yes <sup>(k)</sup>		yes	no	yes
Position compatible with a <b>TOP TETHER</b> hook	no	no <sup>(j)</sup> / yes <sup>(k)</sup>		yes	no	yes
" <b>Carrycot</b> " type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		no	no	no
" <b>Rearward facing</b> " <b>ISOFIX</b> child seat (R1/R2/R3)	no	no <sup>(j)</sup> / R3 <sup>(h)(k)</sup>	no	R3	no	R3
" <b>Forward facing</b> " <b>ISOFIX</b> child seat (F1/F2X/F3)	no	no <sup>(j)</sup> / F3 <sup>(h)(k)</sup>		F3	no	F3

	Seat numbers				
	Front seats <sup>(b)</sup>		Rear seats <sup>(b)</sup> row 2		
	1	2	3	4	5
"Booster" child seat (B2 / B3) <sup>(m)</sup>	no	B3 <sup>(h)(j)(k)</sup>	B3	B3 <sup>(i)</sup> (i)	B3

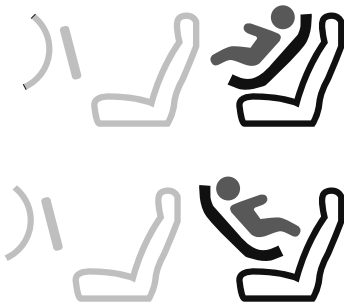
- (a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying a child at this seat position.
- (c) To install a **"rearward facing"** child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated **"OFF"**.
- (d) Only a **"forward facing"** child seat is authorized at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated **"ON"**.
- (e) For a **"rearward facing"** and/or **"forward facing" universal child seat (U)** for groups **0, 0+, 1, 2** or **3** or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.
- (f) For a **"forward facing"** universal child seat **(UF)** in groups **1, 2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 cm and 150 cm in height only.
- (g) For a seat with height adjustment, adjust it to the highest position.
- (h) Adjust the front passenger seat to the fully rearward longitudinal position.
- (i) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.
- (j) Seat not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.
- (k) Seat fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.
- (l) If a child restraint system is installed on these seats, adjust the head restraint of the seat to the maximum height position or remove it if necessary.
- (m) It is not possible to install 3 booster child seats on the rear seats at the same time.

**Rules:**

- A position that is i-Size compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and F2X, F2, B2.
- A position that is R3 compatible is also compatible for R1 and R2.
- A position that is R2 compatible is also compatible for R1.
- A position that is F3 compatible is also compatible for F2X and F2.
- A position that is B3 compatible is also compatible for B2.

**Child Restraint Installation on a Rear Seat**

Forward-facing or rearward-facing



- Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

- Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

**Center rear seat**

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.

**Seat-specific Recommendations****⚠ WARNING****Installing a booster seat**

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck. Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

**⚠ WARNING****Installing a Child Seat with support leg.**

Ensure that the Support Leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

**Never install a seat with support leg on the center rear passenger seat.**

**Three-Point Seat Belt**

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened ➡ 42

1

2

3

4

5

6

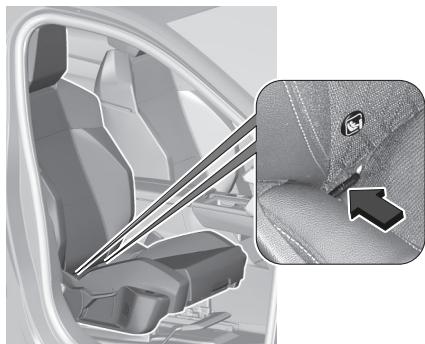
7

8

9

10

## ISOFIX Brackets



Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the child restraints table.



ISOFIX brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest. To get access

to the ISOFIX brackets, first pull the zipper.

An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according to UN Regulation No. 129. All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, child restraint installation table ⇨ 42.

When fastening ISOFIX child restraint systems on adjustable passenger seats, first incline the backrest as far as necessary backwards in order to get access to the ISOFIX brackets.

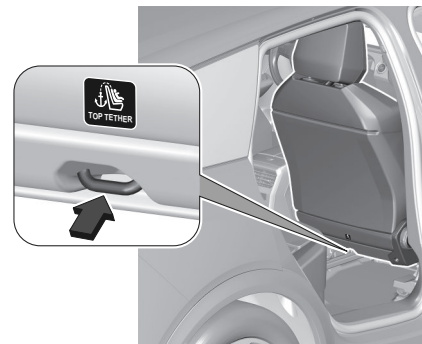
After the proper fastening of the ISOFIX child restraint system, incline the backrest forward again.

Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets.

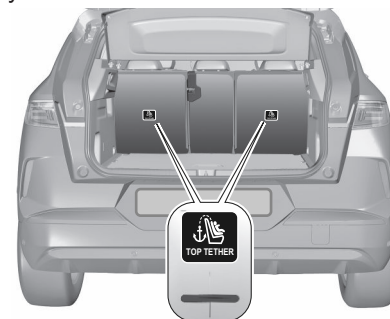
i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.



## Top-Tether Anchors



Top-tether anchors are marked with a symbol for child seat.



In addition to the ISOFIX brackets, fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether anchors.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table. ➔42

## Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Do not use forward facing child restraint system at all seats when child's weight is below 13 kg or child's size is less than 76 cm and up to the age of 15 months.

Suitable are child restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.

The following child restraints are recommended for the following weight classes:

- Römer Baby-Safe 3 i-Size  
Size: 40 - 83 cm  
Age: from birth to 15 months  
Weight: up to 13 kg  
Recommended with its ISOFIX base.

Suitable for rearward facing installation only.

- Römer TriFix 2 i-Size  
Size: 76 - 105 cm  
Age: from 15 months to 4 years  
Weight: from 9 to 22 kg  
Installed with ISOFIX and Top-tether mountings.  
Suitable for forward facing installation only.
- Römer Kidfix i-Size  
Size: 100 - 150 cm  
Age: from 3.5 to 12 years  
Weight: from 15 to 36 kg with or without ISOFIX mountings  
The child is restrained by the seat belt.  
Bought in Stellantis & You, Sales and Services.  
We recommend using the child seat with the backrest.  
If the backrest is removed for a child over 138 cm, the secure guard must also be removed.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.  
Child seat at the front: Adjust the front passenger seat to the highest and fully back longitudinal position with the backrest straightened.

Child seat at the rear: Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing or the rearward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

In case of any interference of the child restraint system with the vehicle seat head rest, adjust or remove the corresponding vehicle seat head rest.

Please follow the child restraint manufacturers instructions to install the corresponding child restraints in the vehicle.

For semi-universal or vehicle specific child restraint system (ISOFIX or belted child restraint system), see the vehicle list provided in the user manual of the child restraint system.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following table. Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**i NOTE**

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials. A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

**Steering Wheel****Steering Wheel Adjustment**

- When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position in a smooth way.

- Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

**⚠ WARNING**

For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

**Tip:**

Driving information and infotainment are available on a 10-inch and a 16-inch screen.

The instrument panel information is visible above the steering wheel, for greater safety and driving comfort. Adjust the steering wheel height so that it does not obstruct the instrument panel.

**Steering Wheel Controls**

Some driver assistance systems, the Infotainment system and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.


Advanced driving assistance systems


⇨ 152

Infotainment System ⇨ 95

**Steering Wheel Heating**

In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the steering wheel. It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

 In the Climate touch screen application, select the Seats and Steering Wheel tab.

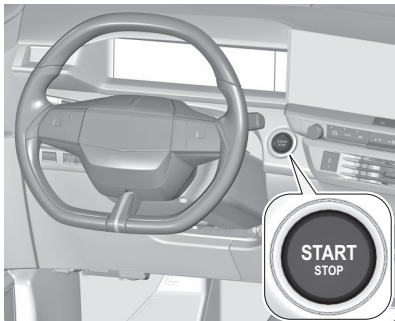
Press  to activate/deactivate the function.

The function is memorised each time the engine is switched off.

## Horn



## Power Button



## Wipers and Washers Control Stalk

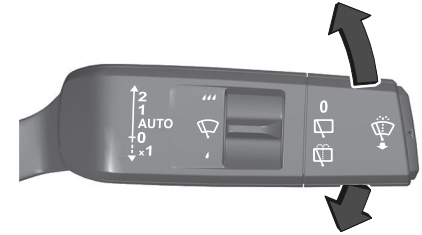
### NOTE


With the wiper lever in position AUTO or INT, 1 or 2 and the ignition switched on after more than one minute: When the outside temperature is below +3°C, the windshield wiper activates only at a speed above 10 km/h. When the outside temperature is above +3°C, the windshield wiper activates immediately.

### NOTE

In position 1 or 2, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced at a speed below 5 km/h and returns to the original frequency at a speed above 10 km/h.

## Windshield wiper with adjustable wiper frequency



- 2 Fast
- 1 Normal
-  Intermittent wiping
- 0 Off
- x1 Single wipe

Do not use if the windshield is frozen. Switch off in car washes. To activate interval wiping mode the next time the ignition is switched on, press the lever downwards to position OFF and back to INT.

### Wiper frequency

Wiper lever in position **INT**, the wiping frequency is depending of the speed of the vehicle.

1

2

3

4

5

6

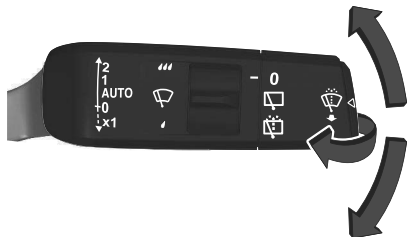
7

8

9

10

### Windshield wiper with rain sensor

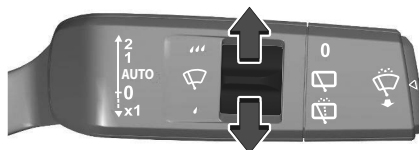


- 2 Fast
- 1 Normal
- AUTO** Automatic wiping
- 0 Off
- x1 Single wipe

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically regulates the frequency of the windshield wiper. If the ignition is switched off, automatic wiping mode is deactivated. To activate automatic wiping mode the next time the ignition is switched on, press the lever downwards to position **OFF** and back to **AUTO**.

Do not use if the windshield is frozen. Switch off in car washes.

### Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Wiper lever in position **AUTO**.

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically regulates the frequency of the windshield wiper.

The sensitivity can be adjusted with the switch on the stalk. Push upwards to increase and downwards to decrease sensitivity.

Make sure the sensor is not blocked ⇨ 22 .

Control indicator ⇨ 122.

### Windshield washer



Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wiper wipes a few times. Washer fluid ⇨ 216.

## Rear Window Wiper And Washer

### Rear window wiper



- 0 off



intermittent wiping



screen wash

Do not use if the rear window is frozen or when a bicycle carrier is used. Switch off in car washes. The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windshield wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

### Rear window washer

Select

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and rear view camera and the wiper wipes as long as is selected. Washer fluid 216

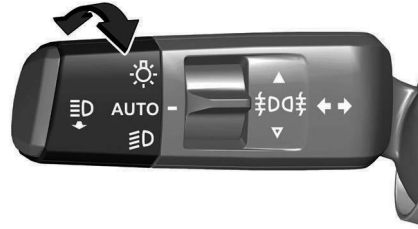
## Exterior Lights

### Lighting Control

#### WARNING

Do not look directly into the LED headlights. Risk of eye damage.

#### Type 1:



#### Type 2:



Turn the light switch:



Sidelights



Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lights.



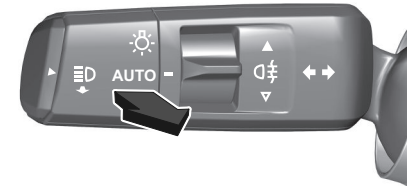
Dipped or main beam headlights.

Control indicator 82.

### Tail lights

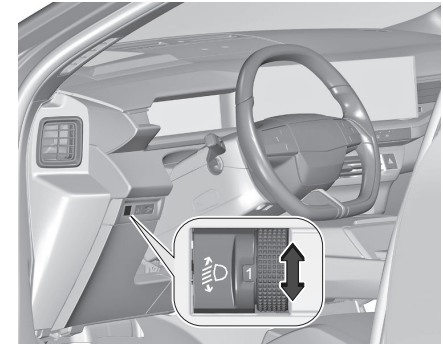
Tail lights are illuminated together with low beam and daytime running lights.

### High beam



Pull the lever beyond the resistance point to switch between low beam and high beam.

### Headlight Height Adjustment



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

To adapt headlight height to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel to required position.

**For PHEV, Hybrid 48 V and ICE propulsion types:**

- 0 Driver's seat occupied
- 2 All seats occupied
- 2 All seats occupied and load compartment loaded
- 4 Driver's seat occupied and load compartment loaded


**For BEV propulsion type only:**

- 0 Driver's seat occupied
- 1 All seats occupied

**Headlights When Driving Abroad**

When driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, the headlights do not have to be adjusted.

**Daytime Running Lights**

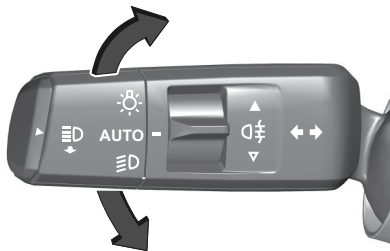
Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight  55.

**Headlight flash**



Pull to the point of resistance to activate the high beam flash.

**Turn light**



- Up** Right turn lights
- Down** Left turn lights

A resistance point can be felt when moving the indicator lever. Constant flashing is activated when the indicator lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or indicator lever is manually moved back to its neutral position. After 20 seconds the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 80 km/h. Activate temporary flashing by holding the indicator lever just before the resistance point. Turn lights will flash until indicator lever is being released. To activate three flashes, tap the indicator lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

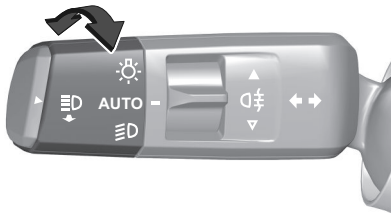
## Emergency Signals



Press the button to operate.

When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically, depending on the force of deceleration. When the vehicle starts moving again, the hazard warning flashers must be deactivated manually.

## Automatic light control



When the automatic light control function is switched on, the system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system.

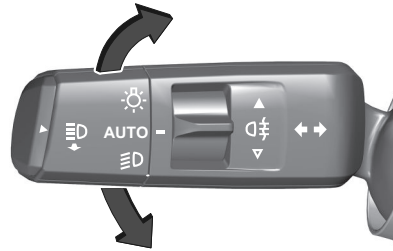
### Automatic headlight activation

Turn the switch in position: **AUTO**

During poor lighting conditions the low beam is switched on.

Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windshield wipers have been activated for several wipes.

## Parking Lights



When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off the ignition.

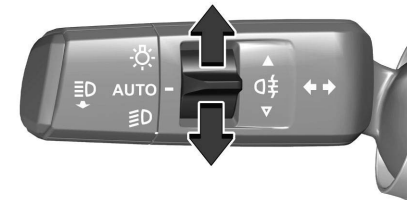
2. Move the lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by an audible chime and the corresponding turn light control indicator.

### Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself. To help, switch on the headlights.

## Rear Foglights



Push the switch up to switch on the rear fog light.  
Push the switch down to switch off the rear fog light.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8


9

10

## Intelli-Lux HD headlights

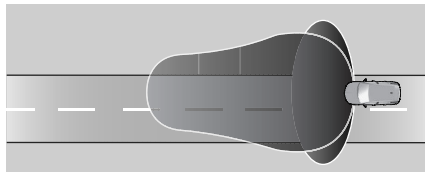
The Intelli-Lux HD headlight system contains a variety of particular LEDs in each headlight which enables the control of the adaptive forward lighting functions.

Light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the lighting conditions, road type and driving situation. The vehicle adapts the headlights automatically to the situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.

The adaptive forward lighting and the Intelli-Lux HD headlights functions can be deactivated or activated in the Infotainment screen and by switching off or on the automatic light control. Infotainment screen  95

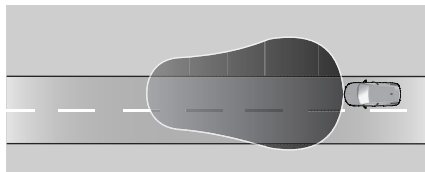
The following functions are available if the adaptive forward lighting is activated on the Infotainment screen and the light switch is in **AUTO**.

### Pedestrian light



Activated automatically when the vehicle starts moving and up to a speed of 25 km/h. This light is designed to enhance visibility of pedestrians on the sides of the vehicle.

### Town light

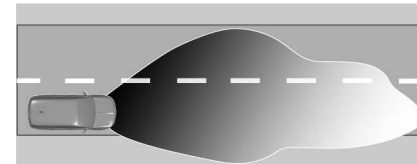


Activated automatically at a speed above 25km/h and deactivated after a few seconds with a speed above 50 km/h. The light is wide to better recognize hazards along the road, e.g. pedestrians, crossings.

### Motorway light

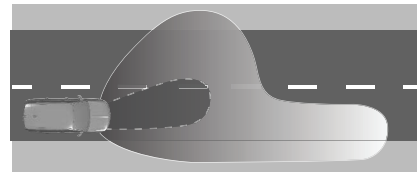
Low beam illumination is adapted to the higher speed driven on motorways.

### Country light



Activated automatically after a small delay when above 50 km/h when driving in rural areas. The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is adapted. Oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

### Adverse weather light



Activated automatically when the weather conditions are met:

- the vehicle speed is between 0 km/h and 70 km/h,
- the rear fog light is off,
- the windshield wipers are activated for more than two minutes.

The light is widened to better recognize the lane markings and the low beam is

dimmed to avoid dazzling the oncoming traffic.

### Fog mode

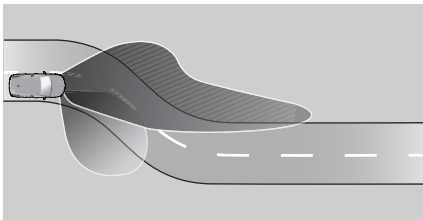
Activated automatically when the rear fog light is switched on. This mode is designed to enhance driver visibility in foggy conditions.

### Cornering light



Activated at a speed of up to approx. 40 km/h when turning off. Depending on the steering wheel angle and the turn lights, a particular LED light function is triggered which illuminates the direction of travel.

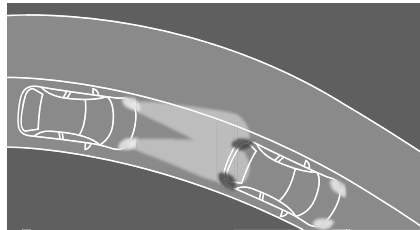
### Curve light



Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally triggered to improve lighting in curves. This function is activated at speeds up to approx. 70 km/h.

### Glare-free high beam

Glare-free high beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 45 km/h. It is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but remains in standby mode.

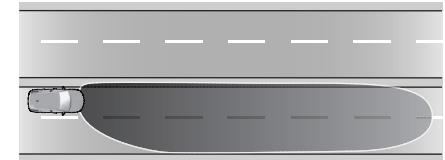


When entering a lit area, the light segments gradually fade from the outside to the inside and switch to low beam.

When exit a lit area, the light segments gradually fade from the inside to the outside and switch to high beam, with

or without a tunnel, depending on traffic conditions.

### Motorway mode



Activated automatically with Glare-Free High Beam and when highway driving is detected. Illumination is adapted to avoid dazzling the oncoming traffic which can be partially hidden behind roadside separations.

### Traffic sign anti-glare

Activated automatically, together with Glare-Free High Beam. This mode is designed to minimize glare from traffic signs.

### Fault in LED headlight system

When the system detects a failure in the LED headlight system, it selects a preset position to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic. A warning is displayed on the cluster.

After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.

1

2

3

4

5

6


7

8

9

10

## Interior Lights

The brightness of the following lights can be adjusted in the settings app in the  Infotainment screen when the exterior lights are on:

- Instrument panel illumination
- Infotainment screen
- Illuminated switches and operation elements

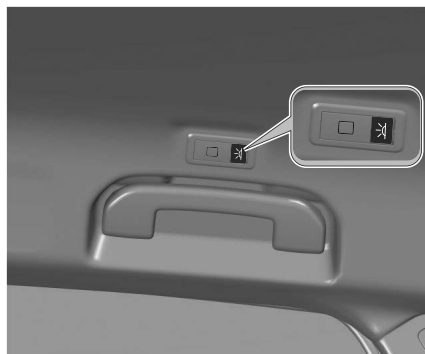
## Courtesy Lights

Press the button to activate the corresponding courtesy light.


### Front courtesy lights



### Rear courtesy lights



## Instrument panel lighting

The brightness of the following lights can be adjusted in the settings app  in the Infotainment screen when the exterior lights are on:

- instrument panel illumination
- Infotainment screen
- illuminated switches and operation elements

The exterior lights can be adjusted when they are automatically activated (indicated by the green tell-tale light on the instrument panel). If the exterior lights are manually activated during

daytime driving, the brightness adjustment feature will be disabled.

## Lighting Features


### Center console lighting

A spotlight integrated in the overhead console illuminates the center console when headlights are switched on.

### Welcome lighting

Some or all of the following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:

- headlights
- interior lights
- turn lights
- sidelights

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is switched on. The function can be activated or deactivated in the settings app  in the Infotainment screen.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- illumination of some switches
- cluster


- door pocket lights

## Guide Me Home Lighting

The following lights are switched on when the ignition is switched off:


- headlights
- interior lights
- center console lighting

They will switch off automatically after a delay.

The function can be activated or deactivated in the settings app  in the Infotainment screen.

## Vehicle locator lighting

This function allows to locate the vehicle, e.g., in weak lighting conditions using the remote control.

Press  on the remote control, an eye-catching animation will play.

## Battery discharge protection

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

## Sunroof

### WARNING

Take care when operating the sunroof.  
Risk of injury, particularly to children.  
Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

### CAUTION

Do not operate the sunroof if a roof rack is fitted.  
Do not place heavy loads on the movable parts of the sunroof.

Switch on ignition to operate the sunroof.



Sunroof blind control



Sunroof control

## Open or close

- To open the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the rear.
- To close the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the front.

## Operation of buttons

- Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof or blind fully.
- Pressing the button again stops the current movement.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10


- When holding a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the sunroof or blind stops when this button is released.
- When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a tilted position (rear is lifted up).

## General hints

### Safety function

If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

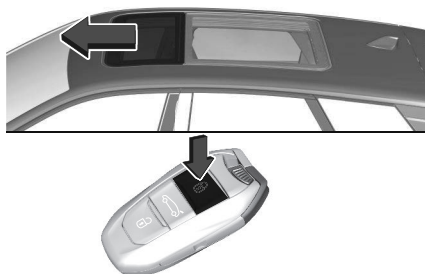
### Override safety function


In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, press and hold .

The sunroof closes with safety function disabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

### Closing sunroof from outside



The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  for more than two seconds to close the sunroof. Release the button to stop the movement.

## Initializing the sunroof

If the automatic operation of the sunroof is not possible, the sunroof has to be initialized:

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press and hold  to close the sunroof.  
When it is completely closed, a short opening and closing motion takes place.
3. Only release  one second after this motion has finished.

## Interior Storage and Features

### WARNING

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments.

## Loading information

### WARNING

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.



- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Make sure that the backrests are securely engaged ⇨ 17. If objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Prevent sliding of loose objects by securing them with straps attached to the lashing eyes ⇨ 63.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the cluster, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.
- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate ⇨ 238.) and the EC kerb weight. To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the weights table at the front of this manual. The EC kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (fuel tank 90% full). Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.
- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to crosswinds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher center of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tire pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and re-tighten the straps frequently.

Do not drive faster than 120 km/h. The permissible roof load is 60kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

## Glove Compartment



The glove box should be closed whilst driving.

## Cupholders

Cupholders are located in the center console between the front seats.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

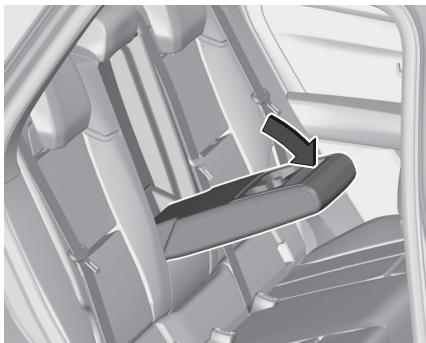
8

9

10

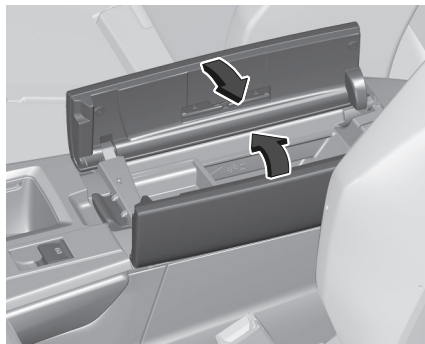


To adjust the position of the cupholder, grab the sliding element and fully press the center button with your thumb. The rear cupholders are located in the armrest between the seats. Fold down the armrest.



## Center Console Compartment

The center console features a big storage space including a removable bin.



Depending on version, additional storage compartments are available on the rear of the center console.

A storage compartment for inductive charging and USB sockets is located beneath the instrument panel. On the inner side of the right lid, there is a clip for storing plastic cards and a pen holder.

Depending on version, the storage compartment may have a sliding cover and a cable pass through that grants

access to storage in the second row center console.

Slide the cover forwards.

Inductive charging ⇨ 71

USB socket ⇨ 63

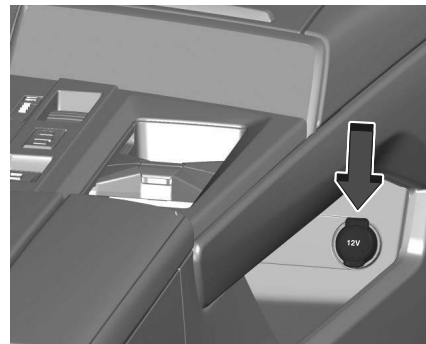
## Door storage

A storage compartment is located in the front and rear door panels.

## Seatback storage

The front seats feature storage pockets on their rear side, accessible to the second row occupants. Depending on the version, an additional pocket may be available on the upper part of the seat.

## 12 V power outlet



A 12 V power outlet is located in the front center console. Another 12 V power outlet is located in the load compartment.

Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.

The 12 V power outlet is deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

## USB Port

These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:



Power supply and recharging.



To connect a portable device to the Infotainment system, use this port



Likewise, plus use of smart-phone applications with the touch screen.

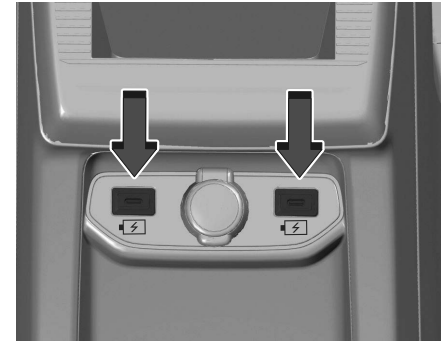
Depending on version, the vehicle is fitted with two USB sockets in the storage compartment beneath the instrument panel.

Two USB sockets on the 2nd row.

### **i** NOTE

The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

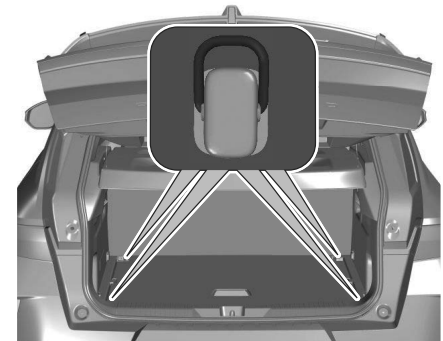
## Rear USB port



The USB port can be used to charge a portable device.

## Load Compartment

### Lashing eyes



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

### Safety net

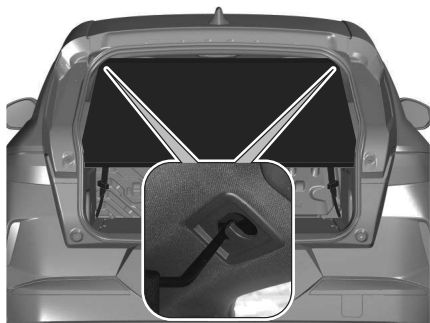
The safety net can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats. Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

### Installation

#### Behind the rear seats

Remove the roller blind.

Load compartment cover → 17



- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the rear seats: suspend and engage

rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.



- Attach the hooks of the safety net straps in the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Rear seat backrests must be raised up.

#### Behind the front seats

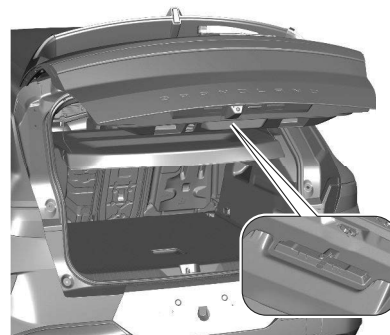
- Push down head restraints and fold down the rear backrests.

Load compartment → 17



- Insert the hooks of the safety net straps into the buckles on the back side of the rear backrests.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.

### Warning triangle



Stow the warning triangle in the space at the rear of the trunk door and secure it with the fastener.

### First aid kit

A first aid kit may be located in the trunk, under the rear floor cover or in the storage space to the side of the trunk.

### Load Compartment Cover

Raise the cover at the recess to gain access to emergency breakdown equipment.



Depending on version, the kit includes:

- A hazard warning triangle.
- A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.
- A spare wheel with the tool kit.

- The traction battery charging cables (Electric).

### NOTE

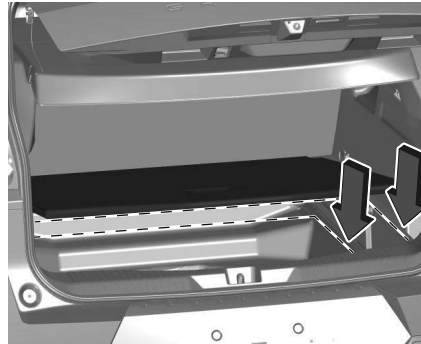
A rubber strap is located on the left side of the trunk to help secure items during transport.

Tire repair kit ⇨ 200.

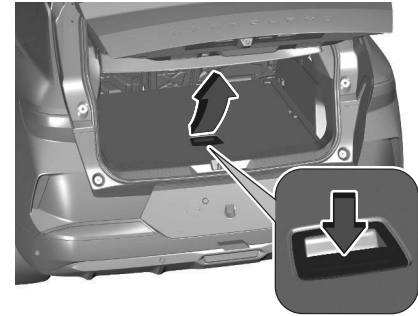
Spare wheel ⇨ 197.

### Double load floor

The double load floor can be inserted in the load compartment in two positions:



- lower position above the rear floor storage cover
- upper position interlocked with the grab handle into back panel trim



To remove, press the handle to unlock the load floor and lift it up while using the handle.

If mounted in the upper position, the space between the load floor and the spare wheel well cover can be used as a storage compartment.

In this position, if the rear seat backrests are folded forwards, an almost completely flat load bay is created.

In the upper position, the double load floor is able to withstand a maximum load of 100 kg. In the lower position, the double load floor is able to withstand the maximum permissible load.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

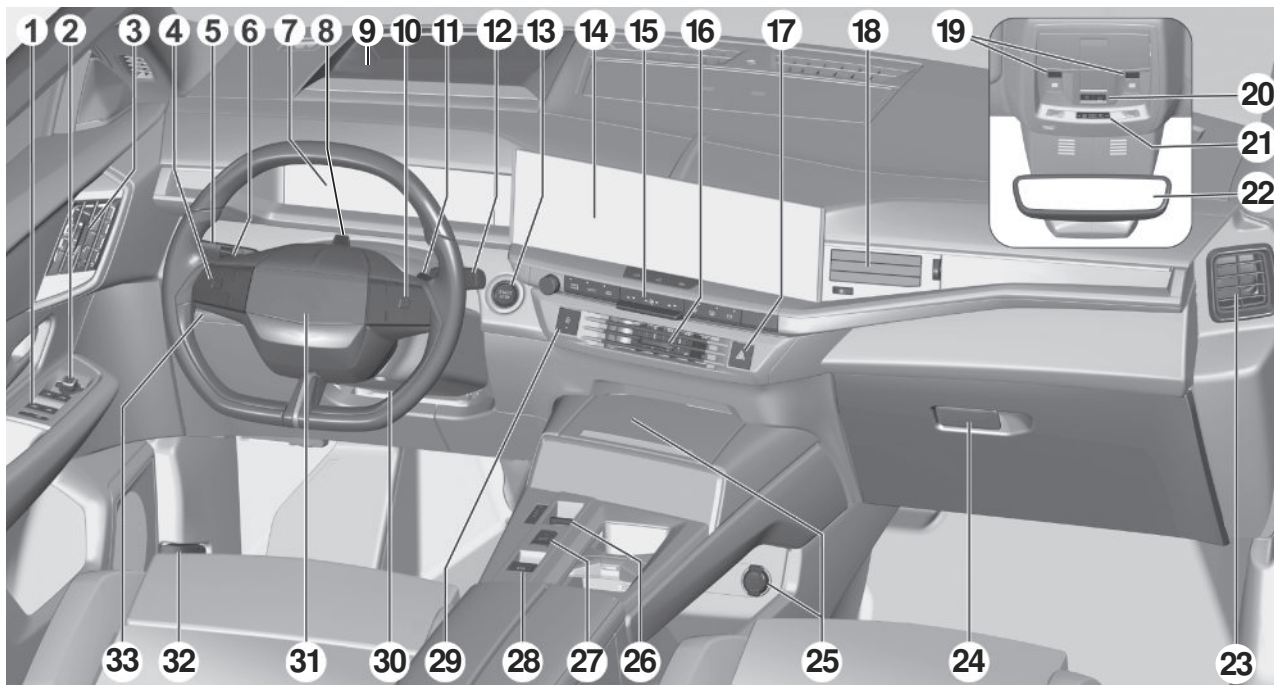
8

9

10

# DASHBOARD INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROL

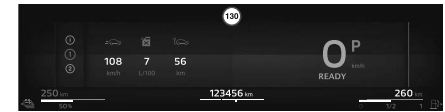
## Instrument Panel Overview



1. Power windows ⇨ 21
2. Exterior mirrors, Extended heads-up display control ⇨ 24
3. Driver side outer air vent
4. ADAS Steering Wheel Controls
5. Lighting Control Stalk
6. Left Steering Wheel Paddle
7. Cluster ⇨ 67
8. Driver Monitoring Camera
9. Extended head-up display
10. Infotainment Steering Wheel Controls ⇨ 95
11. Right Steering Wheel Paddle
12. Windshield Wiper and Washer Control Stalk ⇨ 51
13. Power button
14. Infotainment Display ⇨ 95
15. Climate control
16. Center air vents
17. Hazard warning flashers ⇨ 193
18. Passenger side center air vent.
19. Interior lights ⇨ 58
20. Emergency call ⇨ 193
21. Seat belt reminder, ⇨ 36  
airbag deactivation ⇨ 38
22. Interior mirror ⇨ 24
23. Passenger side outer air vent.
24. Airbag deactivation ⇨ 38,  
glovebox
25. 12 V power outlet ⇨ 62,  
USB ports ⇨ 63
26. Gear selection, selector lever
27. Drive mode Selector ⇨ 130
28. Parking brake ⇨ 123
29. Central locking button ⇨ 9
30. Steering wheel adjustment
31. Horn ⇨ 51
32. Hood release lever ⇨ 16

33. Headlight range adjustment, heated windshield, power tailgate, fuel filler flap, Anti-theft alarm system status LED, coin holder

## Instrument Cluster



In addition to warning lights, gauges and indicators, the following information is available:

- trip odometer
- gear shift indication
- service information
- vehicle and warning messages
- driver assistance messages
- pop-up messages
- infotainment information

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10



Press the button to scroll through the pages or to close a pop-up message.

### Vehicle settings and driving functions

Select one of the following settings:

- Driving assistance
- User settings



Short press: select or confirm a menu or setting.



Long press: resetting the service reminder.



: scroll through the settings menus.

## Odometer



The total recorded distance of the vehicle is displayed in the right bottom corner of the cluster (MHEV/PHEV), or the bottom left corner (BEV).

### Trip odometer

The following trip odometer pages are selectable in trip/autonomy information menu or by pressing on the right stalk button:

- Trip in progress with instantaneous fuel consumption
- Trip 1 or 2 with average consumption, average speed and trip distance

Hybrid 48 V vehicle: the distance percentage of electric driving is shown additionally.

## Fuel gauge



Displays the fuel level in the tank.

Control indicator  illuminates if the level in the tank is low.

Never run the fuel tank dry.

The top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity, due to the remaining fuel in the tank.

## Power indicator gauge



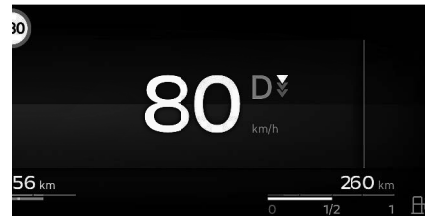
The power indicator gauge informs about the current energy situation of the vehicle.

Power: Energy consumption during high power demand. Hybrid 48 V vehicles: ICE and electrical engine work combined.

Eco An optimum in energy is accessible in all driving modes. Hybrid 48 V vehicles: optimum usage of ICE or electric engine.

Charge: Battery is being charged with energy resulting from braking or deceleration of the vehicle.

## Speedometer



Indicates the vehicle speed.

## High Voltage Battery Gauge



Displays the high voltage battery state of charge.

## Pedestrian Safety Alert

The sound of the pedestrian safety alert is generated to indicate the vehicle presence to pedestrians. It is active up to 30 km/h.

## Engine coolant temperature gauge



Displays the coolant temperature.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**50** engine operating temperature not yet reached

**90** normal operating temperature

**Top of the gauge** temperature too high


Control indicator  illuminates red if engine coolant temperature is too high.

**CAUTION**


If the engine coolant temperature is too high, stop the vehicle, switch off the engine. Danger to the engine. Check the coolant level.

## Engine Oil Level Monitor

The state of the engine oil level is displayed in the cluster for a few seconds following the service information after switching on the ignition. A proper state of engine oil level is indicated by a message.

If the engine oil level is low, the two indicators  flash and a message is indicated.

Confirm the engine oil level by using the dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.

Engine oil  70.


A fault of measurement is indicated by a message. Check the engine oil level manually by using the dipstick.

## Service display

The service system informs when to change the engine oil and filter or a vehicle service is required. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change is required can vary considerably.

A required service due is displayed in the cluster for several seconds after switching on the ignition.

If no service is required for the next 3000 km or more, no service information appears in the display.

If service is required within the next 3000 km, the remaining distance or time duration is indicated for several seconds. Simultaneously indicator 

illuminates permanently as reminder. If service is required in less than 1000 km, indicator flashes and then illuminates permanently. The remaining distance or time duration is indicated for several seconds.

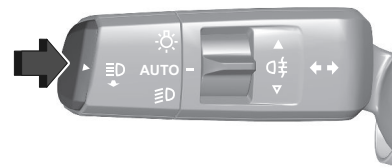
Overdue service is indicated by a message in the cluster which indicates the overdue distance. The indicator flashes and then illuminates permanently until service is executed.

### Reset of service interval

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to ensure proper functionality. It is recommended to seek the assistance of a workshop.

Operate as following:

- Switch off the ignition.



- Press and hold left stalk button to reset the service interval
- Trip odometer can be reset with right stalk button press.

### Retrieving service information

To retrieve the status of the service information at any time:

- Press the end of the right stalk to access the menu.
- Scroll through the pages using the steering wheel toggle up and down.
- Short press on the toggle when in the service menu.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds.

### Inductive charging

#### **⚠ WARNING**

When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop. Leaving the sliding lid open will improve mobile device functionality.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Leaving the sliding lid open will improve smartphone functionality.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Inductive charging can affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or other medical devices. If applicable, seek medical advice before using the inductive charging device.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile device, as these objects could become very hot.

This system allows wireless charging of a mobile device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi. The mobile device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.

To charge a mobile device:



1. Remove all objects from the charging device.
2. Place the mobile device on the charging area. Note that the mobile device must be placed between the positioning aids.

On some mobile devices, a back cover with an integrated coil or a jacket may be required to use inductive charging. A protective cover for the mobile device could have impact on the inductive charging.

In the event that the mobile device is not charging properly, rotate it 180° and place it on the charging device again.

1

2

3

4

5

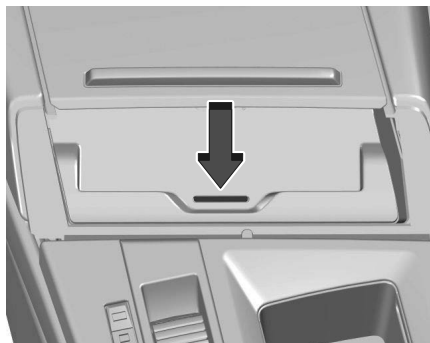
6

7

8

9

10

**Status LED**

The LED indicates the current charging status.

**Illuminates green**

The mobile device is charging.

**Flashes yellow**

The mobile device has not been centered properly in the charging zone or an unknown object has been detected in the charging zone.

**Illuminates yellow**

There is a problem with the mobile device's battery or a fault of the inductive charger has been detected. If the problem persists, seek the assistance of a workshop.

**⚠ WARNING**

When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop

**Leaving the sliding lid open will improve smartphone functionality.**

**i NOTE**

The Inductive Charger features a ventilation system, some fan noise may be audible and air may be felt coming through the ventilation holes around the charger.

**Vehicle customization**

The vehicle's behavior can be personalized by changing the settings in the Infotainment screen.

Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

**Outside temperature**

The outside temperature is shown in the status bar of the Infotainment screen.

**Warning Lights - Indicators - Messages**

The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes. If no number: for information only. If a red or orange warning light comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.

**Overview**

The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.

- 1: For information only
- 2: For information and warning: an action may be necessary
- 3: seek the assistance of a workshop
- 4: stop engine and seek the assistance of a workshop
- 5: have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop

## Overview table



4 STOP ⇨ 75



4 Traction battery overheating ⇨ 75



4 System malfunction ⇨ 75



2 Cable connected ⇨ 75



2/ 5 Accessory battery low charge ⇨ 75



4 Braking fault ⇨ 76



2 Parking Brake ⇨ 75



4 Power Steering fault ⇨ 76



3 Suspension system fault ⇨ 76



2 Door open ⇨ 76



2 Seatbelt unfastened ⇨ 76



2 Driver Attention Alert warning ⇨ 76



3 Service ⇨ 77



3 Minor braking fault ⇨ 77



3 Electric Parking brake fault ⇨ 77



3 Automatic Parking brake fault ⇨ 78



3 ABS fault ⇨ 78



3 Power steering fault ⇨ 78



3 Traction control system fault ⇨ 78



3 Emergency brake fault ⇨ 78



3 In-Crash braking fault ⇨ 79



3 TPMS low pressure warning ⇨ 79



1/ 3 Parking sensors obstacle detected ⇨ 79



3 Airbag fault ⇨ 79



2 Front passenger airbag ON ⇨ 79



2 Front passenger airbag OFF ⇨ 79



2 Low traction battery level ⇨ 80

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10



2 Tortoise mode ⇨ 80



3 Pedestrian horn fault ⇨ 80



2/ Collision Risk Alert/Active  
3 Safety Brake ⇨ 80



2/ Traffic Sign Recognition  
3 System fault ⇨ 80



2 Lane Keeping Assist ⇨ 81



2/ Driver Attention  
3 Alert ⇨ 81



1 Rear Fog light ⇨ 81



3 Automatic Headlight dipping fault ⇨ 81



1 Vehicle ready to drive ⇨ 81



1 Seat occupied ⇨ 82



1 Turn Signal ⇨ 82



1 Daytime Running Lights ⇨ 82



1 Dipped beam head-lights ⇨ 82



1 Automatic headlamp dipping ⇨ 82



1 OnePedal ⇨ 82



1 Autohold ⇨ 82



1 Main beam head-lights ⇨ 82



2 Foot on the brake ⇨ 82



1 OnePedal standby ⇨ 83



1 Seat unoccupied ⇨ 83

## Persistent warning light

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lights inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lights) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lights). Some lights light up in two ways (steady or flashing) and/or in several colors.

### Associated warnings

The illumination of a light may be accompanied by an audio signal and/or a message displayed in a screen. Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each light for further information.

### When the ignition is switched on

Some red or orange warning lights come on for a few seconds when the

ignition is switched on. These warning lights should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

## List of warning and indicator lights

### Red warning/indicator lights

#### STOP



Steady, associated with another warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.

Carry out and then (4).

#### Traction battery overheating



Steady, combined with the STOP warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal



Steady, combined

with the STOP warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The traction battery's temperature is too high.

Carry out (4).

**Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.**

#### Traction battery malfunction



Steady, combined with the Service warning light, accompanied by the display of a message.



The traction battery has a fault.

Carry out (4).

#### System malfunction



Steady.

The system is faulty.  
Carry out (5) and then (4).

### Cable connected



Steady when the ignition is switched on.

The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.



Steady when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by  
Steady when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector. Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

### 12 V battery charge



Steady.  
The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).

The 12 V battery charge level is low (2), if persisting (5) or (4).

The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).

Carry out (1).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilize the vehicle:

- Fit the chock against one of the wheels. Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning light does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

### Braking



Steady.  
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (2), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (4).



Steady.  
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.

Carry out (2) and then (4).

### Electric parking brake



Steady.  
The electric parking brake is applied.



Flashing.  
Application/release is faulty.

Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).

Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox. Switch off the ignition and carry out (3).

### Power steering



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal.

The power steering has a fault (4).

### Suspension system



Steady.  
A malfunction of the active suspension system is detected.

Reinitialize the system:

- Switch the ignition off and wait for at least 30 seconds.
- Switch the ignition on again and wait for at least 5 seconds before starting the engine.

If the problem persists, carry out (3).

### Door(s) open



Steady, associated with a message identifying the access (2).

An audio signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 10 km/h (6 mph).

A door or the trunk is not properly closed.

### Seat belts not fastened/unfastened



Steady or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audio signal.

A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

### Driver Attention Assistance Drowsiness Alert



If driver drowsiness is detected by camera by driving above 65 km/h, a light and an audible signal is emitted (according to the continuous eye closures duration) (2).

## Orange warning/indicator lights

### Service



Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning light(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel. You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.

For other faults, such as with the tire under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning light(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".

Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable. Carry out (2).

### Braking



Steady.

A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.

Drive carefully.

Carry out (3).

### Malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".



The vehicle cannot be immobilized with the engine running.

If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.

The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a fault with the control.

Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".



The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.

When stationary, to immobilize the vehicle:

- Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator light lights up on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

- Park on a level surface.
- Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.

Then carry out (3).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

### Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)



Steady.

The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated. If automatic application/release is no longer possible:

- Start the engine.
- Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
- Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
- Release the control and the brake pedal.

If the automatic parking brake indicator remain illuminated, carry out (3).

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



Steady.

The anti-lock braking system has a fault.

The vehicle retains conventional braking.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

### Power steering



Steady.

A minor fault in the power steering has been detected.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

### Traction Control



Steady.

The system is deactivated.

The Traction Control system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and at speeds above approximately 50 km/h (31 mph).

At speeds below 50 km/h (31 mph), it can be reactivated manually.



Flashing.

ESC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.



Steady.

The ESC/ASR system has a fault. Carry out (3).

### Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".



Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.

If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

## In Crash Braking



Steady, associated with the Service warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.



The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3) quickly

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System Low Pressure Warning



Steady.

The pressure in one or more tires is too low.  
Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible.  
Reinitialize the detection system after adjusting the pressure.



Under-inflation warning light flashing then steady and Service warning light steady.



The tire pressure monitoring system is faulty.

Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.

Check the tire pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

## Parking sensors



Flashing.

The system detects an obstacle.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message **"Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual"**.

The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.  
Clean the front and/or rear sensors.

## Airbags



Steady, associated with the Service warning light and accompanied by the display of a message.



One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.  
Carry out (3).

## Front passenger airbag (ON)



Steady.

The front passenger airbag is activated.  
The control is set to the "ON" position.

**In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!**

## Front passenger airbag (deactivated)



Steady.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is set to the "OFF" position.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning light on).

### Low traction battery level (BEV)



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal.

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.

View the remaining range.

Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

### Tortoise mode with limited driving range (BEV)



Steady.

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

The engine power gradually decreases.

You must put the vehicle on charge.

If the warning light remains lit, carry out (2).

### Pedestrian horn (BEV)



Steady.

Horn fault detected.

Carry out (3).

### Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake



Flashing.

The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.

The system has been deactivated via the touch screen.



Steady, accompanied by a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Clean the front camera.



Steady.



The system has a fault.

If these warning lights come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).



Steady.



The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

### Traffic Sign Recognition



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Clean the front camera.

### Lane keeping assist



Flashing.

You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.



Steady.

The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Clean the front camera.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.



The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3)

### Driver's Attention Assistance System (DAA)



Steady.

The system is deactivated.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Clean the front camera.

### Rear foglights



Steady.

The lights are on.

### Automatic headlight dipping



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal and a message.

A function or camera malfunction is detected.

Carry out (2).

### Green warning/indicator lights

#### Vehicle ready to drive (BEV)



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal when it comes on.

The vehicle is ready to drive.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

The indicator light goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving. The light will go out when you switch off the motor and exit the vehicle.

### Seat occupied/Seat belt fastened



Steady.

With the ignition on, the driver or a passenger has fastened their seat belt.

### Turn Signals



Flashing with audio signal.

The turn signals are on.

### Daytime running lights/Sidelights



Steady.

With adequate ambient light, the daytime running lights are on. With inadequate ambient light, the sidelights are on.

### Dipped beam headlights



Steady.

The lights are on.

### Automatic headlight dipping



Steady.



The function is activated via the touch screen.

The lighting control stalk ring is in the "AUTO" position.

For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.



**Auto Hold**

Steady

The hydraulic pressure is enough to keep the vehicle at standstill.

### One Pedal



Steady

The function is active

### Auto Hold



Steady

The hydraulic pressure is enough to keep the vehicle at standstill.

### Blue warning/indicator lights

#### Main beam headlights



Steady.

#### Black/white warning lights

#### Foot on the brake



Steady.

Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.

With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of mode **P** on an automatic gearbox.

## Grey warning/indicator lights

### One Pedal



Steady

The function is currently suspended.

### Seat unoccupied/Seat belt not fastened



Steady.

With the ignition on, one of the front or rear passenger seats is considered to be unoccupied.

### Driving assistance systems notification

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lights inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lights) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lights). Some lights light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colors.

### Associated warnings

The illumination of a light may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a

screen. Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each light for further information.

### When the ignition is switched on

Some red or orange warning lights come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lights should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

### Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometers) and/or time (months or days).

The alert is triggered when either the distance or time limit is reached, whichever comes first.

The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the

distance traveled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.

- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

### NOTE

The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

In accordance with the vehicle's maintenance plan, the service may consist of either:

- A yearly visit.
- A complete service.

### Service wrench



On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.

Between 1,860 and 620 miles (3,000 and 1,000 km) or 60 and 21 days remain before the next service is due.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10



Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.

The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km) or 21 days. Have the vehicle serviced very soon.

### Service spanner flashing



Fixed, when the ignition is switched on. The servicing interval has been exceeded.

Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

### Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Press and hold the button located on the end of the left control stalk.
- Without pressing the brake pedal, press the **START/STOP** button once; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.

- When the display indicates **=0**, a confirmation message appears; release the lighting control stalk button and the spanner symbol disappears.

### **i** NOTE

If you disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

### Reminder of the servicing information



Servicing information is accessible using the **Settings > Vehicle** application on the touch screen.

- Then select **Safety > Diagnostics**.

### Thermal comfort consumption indicator

It is available in the display pages of the instrument panel.

The indicator shows the consumption of the traction battery electrical energy by the thermal comfort devices in the passenger compartment.

The devices in question are the heating and air conditioning systems.

This equipment can be used:

- If the vehicle is not plugged in, when the **READY** light is lit.
- If the vehicle is plugged in, when the ignition is switched on ("Lounge" mode).

Selecting **ECO** mode limits the performance of some of this equipment.

### **i** NOTE

To quickly heat or cool the passenger compartment, feel free to temporarily select the maximum heating or cooling setting.

Excessive use of thermal comfort equipment can significantly decrease the vehicle range.

Remember to optimize equipment settings upon achieving the desired level of comfort, and adjust them if necessary whenever you start the vehicle.

After an extended period without using the heating, you may notice a slight odor during the first few minutes of use.

## Vehicle messages

Messages are indicated in the information cluster, in some cases together with a warning chime.



Press to confirm a message.

### Vehicle and service messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

### Messages in the information cluster

Some important messages may appear additionally in the Infotainment screen. Some messages only pop-up for a few seconds.


### Vehicles with navigation system

The vehicle recognizes low emission zones. An audible message is given when entering or exiting a low emission zone and an icon will be shown on the navigation map.

## Warning chimes

The warning chime regarding not fastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

Whenever a warning chime sounds, pay attention to the messages displayed and the warning lights on the information cluster.

When a failure is detected in the sound module  Appears on the cluster accompanied by a display message. No warning chime will sound, also not for the driver assistance system.

### When starting the engine or whilst driving

A warning chime will sound in situations such as

- a seat belt is not fastened
- a door or the tailgate is not fully closed
- a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied
- cruise control deactivates automatically
- a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded
- a warning message appears on the cluster

- the electronic key is not in the passenger compartment
- the parking assist detects an object
- an unintended lane change occurs
- the exhaust filter has reached the maximum filling level
- hands-off driving is recognized
- drowsiness of the driver is recognized
- a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly

### When the vehicle is parked and / or the driver's door is opened

A warning chime will sound when :

- the exterior lights are on
- the key is in the ignition switch

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## Climate Controls

### Electronic climate control system



Quick Launch Function



Display the menu for the climate settings.



fan speed



automatic mode



manual air re-circulation



demisting and defrosting



heated rear window and exterior mirrors



heated windshield



Temperature Up/Down



**A/C** Air conditioning on/off



Automatic air conditioning on/off and setting

1 = soft, 2 = normal, 3 = fast



Driver/front passenger temperature synchronization



Air flow adjustment

### Air Conditioning On/Off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:

- It lowers the temperature in summer.
- It increase the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.

- Press button **4-A/C** to switch the air conditioning on/off.

When the function is switched on, "A/C" changes color.

#### **i** NOTE

Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated. To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air re-circulation for a brief period.

Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

### Switching off the air conditioning system

- Press button **OFF**.

Its indicator lamp lights up and all the other indicator lamps of the air conditioning system go off.

This action deactivates all of the functions of the air conditioning system. The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

## Re-circulation Control

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windshield and side windows.

Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odors and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.



Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/ extinction of the indicator lamp).

### **i** NOTE

This function is activated automatically when the front screenwash is used or reverse gear is engaged.

## Automatic A/C Control

This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

- Press **AUTO** to activate/deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the air conditioning system is operating automatically.

The intensity of the automatic air conditioning is modulated by choosing one of the following settings:

- **AUTO SOFT**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
- **AUTO NORMAL**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).
- **AUTO FAST**: provides dynamic and efficient air distribution.

To change the AUTO mode, touch in the information display **AUTO** successively.

To ensure passenger comfort in the rear seats, favor settings **AUTO NORMAL** and **AUTO FAST**.

### **!** CAUTION

In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been

reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

## Maximum Windshield Demist-Defrost Control

This mode allows the windshield and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.



Press this button to activate/ deactivate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/ extinction of the indicator lamp).

The mode automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow, air intake and distributes ventilation optimally to the windshield and side windows. The air flow can be changed manually without deactivating this mode.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**i NOTE**

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

**⚠ WARNING**

In wintry conditions, before moving off, it is essential to remove any snow or ice from the windscreen around the camera. Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

**Heated windshield**

In cold weather, this function heats the entire windshield and complements the Automatic Visibility program to speed up the evacuation of elements that interfere with visibility (e.g. dew, mist, frost, snow), located on either side of the windshield.

It can be used both before setting off and while driving.

**Switching on/off**

- With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).

The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.

The function switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

**Rear Window Demist-Defrost Control**

This demisting/de-icing only works with the engine running.

Depending on version, it also demists/defrosts the door mirrors.



Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/switching off).

The function can be activated whatever the outside temperature may be. The period of operation depends on the outside temperature. Demisting/defrosting therefore switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

**Driver Temperature Control**

The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

- Press one of the buttons + or - or drag vertically to increase or decrease the value.

It is possible to go beyond the minimum and maximum values by selecting respectively Low or High.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

**Passenger Temperature Control**

This function allows you to program the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx.

21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.

This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

## Programming



In the **Climate** touch screen application, select the **Pre-conditioning** tab.

1. Press + to add a program.
2. Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press OK.
3. Press ON to activate this programming.

The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is connected (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.

### **i** NOTE

You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system. To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.



The temperature pre-conditioning can be programmed

via the Information Display or the **MyOpel** App

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

### **i** NOTE

The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.  
The door mirrors are folded when the temperature pre-conditioning and the ignition are on.

### **i** NOTE

#### **Vehicles equipped with an alarm system**

Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced.

### **Operating conditions**

The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked**.

When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery

charge level is greater than 20% (Rechargeable hybrid) or 30% (Electric). When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring program is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the program will be deactivated.

## Automatic Air Conditioning Manual Settings

It is possible to manually adjust one or more of these functions, while the system retains automatic control of the other functions:

- air flow.
- air distribution.

The indicator lamp in the AUTO goes out if a setting is changed.

- Press AUTO again to reactivate automatic air conditioning.

### **Adjusting the air flow**

- Press one of the buttons or drag horizontally to increase or decrease air flow.  
It is also possible to directly press one of the values.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**⚠ CAUTION**

Switching off the air conditioning system. When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.  
"OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

**Adjusting the air distribution**

- Touch the arrows on the display to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.

- ↗ Windshield and side windows
- > Central and side air vents
- ↘ Footwells

A symbol is activated to display the presence of blown air in the direction indicated.

It is possible to activate all three buttons simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

**Rear vents**

Rear vents in center console are for cooling only. Close in cold environment to avoid ventilating cold air to the rear passengers.

**Quick Launch Function** MAX MIN

Using the interior temperature sensor, this function automatically activates: If cold temperatures are detected (below around 4°C):

- Heating (**High**)/Heated seats/Heated steering wheel.
- Air distribution towards the footwells and maximum air flow.

If mild temperatures are detected (between approximately 4°C and 35°C):

- Air conditioning (**AUTO FAST**).
- Automatic air distribution and maximum air flow.
- Temperature setting at 21°C.

If hot temperatures are detected (above around 35°C):

- Air conditioning (**Low**)/Ventilated seats.
- Air distribution towards the side and central vents and maximum air flow.

- To activate/deactivate the function, press button **10-MIN/MAX°**.

**Clean Cabin Function**

It includes the AQS (Air Quality System) and Clean Air functions.

- To activate/deactivate the function, press **the button**.

**AQS function**

Using an exterior pollution sensor, this function automatically activates the re-circulation of interior air when a certain level of pollutants in the exterior air is detected.

When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, re-circulation of interior air is automatically deactivated.

This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odors.

**Temperature Synchronization**

The driver side temperature setting is applied to the passenger side.

- Press **SYNC** to activate/deactivate the function.

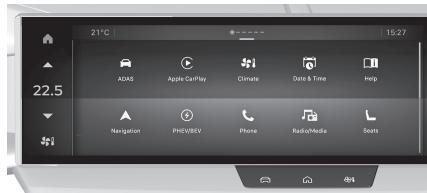
The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons.


## Displays


The cluster can indicate:


- time
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment system section → 95
- indication of parking assist instructions → 178
- navigation, see description in the Infotainment system section → 111
- vehicle and system messages → 85.
- settings for vehicle customization → 72 .


## Infotainment screen




 Displays the menu for the climate settings.


 Displays the home screen


 Displays the menu for the driver assistant systems.


 Displays the navigation menu.


 Displays the Apple CarPlay app on the Infotainment screen.


 Displays the current energy flow within the electric system.


 Displays the phone menu.  
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active.

 Displays the settings for date and time of the audio system.

 Displays the audio menu.

 Displays the help menu.

 Displays the menu for the seat settings.

 The system starts when the ignition is switched on.

- Short press, ignition off: system on/off.
- Short press, ignition on: mute/restore sound.

- Long press, ignition on: start standby mode (mute sound and clock display).
- Rotate collar: Adjust volume

## Head Up Display

This extended head-up display system projects information onto the windshield in the driver's field of vision so that they do not need to take their eyes off the road.

### WARNING

No object must be placed in the cavity - risk of damaging the system!

### NOTE

For optimum use, consider adjusting the driver's seat and the height of the extended head-up display.

To adjust the position of the HUD, rotate the mirror adjustment knob to the forward position and tilt the knob to set the HUD to the desired position.

1

2

3

4

5

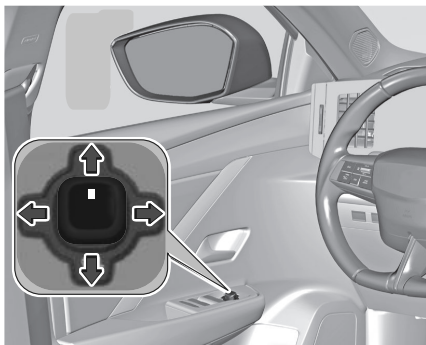
6

7

8

9

10



Brightness is adjusted using the brightness settings in the Settings page of the infotainment screen.

Contents of the HUD can be set using the page customization settings in the infotainment display.

Vehicle customization ➞ 72

### **i NOTE**

In certain extreme weather conditions (e.g. rain and/or snow, bright sunlight) and when wearing polarized sunglasses, the extended head-up display may not be legible or may be momentarily obscured.

### **i NOTE**


The Extended Head Up Display is associated with a specific windshield approved by the Manufacturer.

If the windshield is replaced outside the dealer network, follow the Manufacturer's recommendations.

## **Pure Mode**

Pure Mode is a special mode designed to display only the essential information to let the driver focus on demanding traffic environments.

It can be switched to manually, automatically, or following a pop-up to the driver when certain time and speed conditions apply.

The mode is indicated by the  icon located at the bottom of the cluster and on the top of the central screen (next to the page indicators).

Shortcuts of the Pure Mode home page are customizable when the Home Page on the central screen contains a grid of six shortcuts.

## **Settings**

Settings can be changed in the Customization menu of the vehicle settings. Selecting "Pure Mode" gives access to the following items:

- Conditions to Switch:
  - Speed: Enables/Disables the speed condition for Pure Mode.
  - Time Frame: Enables/Disables the time related conditions for Pure Mode.
    - Automatic: the system switches to Pure Mode after a customizable delay following detection of low light conditions.
    - Custom: the system switches to Pure Mode when the onboard time is within a custom timeframe set by the user.
- Confirmation:
  - Switch automatically: when selected, the system will switch to Pure Mode automatically when the conditions are met, without an additional confirmation by the driver.
  - Ask before switching: when enabled, if the system detects that the conditions for Pure Mode are met, a pop-up will be displayed

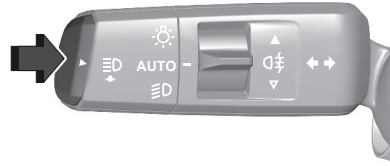
asking the driver if he wants to switch.

### Activation

It is possible to activate the mode through:

- Opening the leftmost homepage (Pure Mode) by swiping to the right on the Infotainment screen, or pressing on the left stalk for over 2 seconds
- Setting the system to switch automatically or accepting the prompted pop-up on the cluster or the HUD (if equipped and activated)  
The pop-up will appear when:


- Vehicle speed exceeds the set threshold
- The set amount of time in darkness has elapsed or the time is within the set time frame



When the popup appears, press on the right steering wheel control to toggle between "Yes" and "No". Confirm the selection by pressing . To dismiss the popup, either press the left stalk button, press "No" or wait a few seconds.

### Deactivation

The mode cannot be automatically turned off. It is possible to exit the mode through:

- Swiping to the left on the Infotainment screen, or
- A short press on left stalk, or
- Home button .

### Fault

If speed or time of day data is not accessible, it will not be possible to automatically switch to Pure Mode.

It is still possible to activate the mode manually.

### Standby Mode

When in standby mode, the HUD and cluster will show the Pure Mode.

However, switching to and from Pure Mode via a swipe on the infotainment screen is not possible.

Switching back from Pure Mode to normal mode will not change mode of the infotainment screen.

### Screen mirroring

When in Pure Mode, the driver can still use the mirroring feature. When it is active, the Pure Mode apps on the infotainment screen are replaced by the mirroring apps.

### Shortcuts

Shortcuts of the Pure Mode home page are customizable when the Home Page on the central screen contains a grid of six shortcuts.

Customization  102

A long press on the icons will not customize/replace the shortcuts. The

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

system will lead to a tutorial popup with a QR code to scan.

## **Vehicle customization**

The vehicle's behavior can be personalized by changing the settings in the Infotainment screen.

Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

# INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

## Introduction about Infotainment System

### WARNING

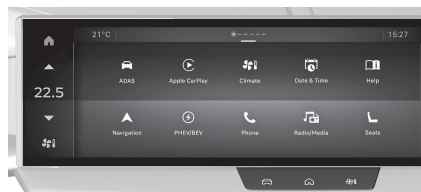
The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.


### Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multi-path reception due to reflection
- shadowing

## Menu



 The system starts when the ignition is switched on.

- Short press, ignition off: system on/off.
- Short press, ignition on: mute/restore sound.
- Long press, ignition on: start standby mode (mute sound and clock display).
- Rotate collar: Adjust volume

## App wall overview (depending on version):



Home page



Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS) menu



Navigation system



Apple CarPlay® / Android Auto®



Energy



Climate control



Phone



Date and time

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10



Radio and media



Help



Seats



Climate control shortcut



Home page shortcut



ADAS shortcut



Climate control

### Information

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Audio equipment and telephone controls with display of associated information.

- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).
- Voice recognition (depending on equipment).
- Time and outside temperature.
- Heating/air conditioning system controls and reminders of settings.
- Settings for driving aid functions, comfort and safety functions, extended head-up display (depending on equipment and version), audio equipment and digital instrument panel.
- Settings for functions specific to rechargeable hybrid vehicles.
- Settings for functions specific to electric vehicles.
- Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions.
- Video tutorials by QR-code (e.g. screen management, driving aids, voice recognition).

### Upper banner

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:

- Outside temperature from the vehicle's sensors (associated with a blue symbol if there is a risk of ice).
- Temperature setting reminder for the air conditioning on the driver's and passenger sides.
- Charge level of the connected smartphone.
- System connection status (Bluetooth®, Wi-Fi, mobile telephone network).
- Time.
- Quick access to the Mirror Screen® functions (associated with a connected smartphone).

Swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to access the notifications centre and display a list of quick settings : Guest, Privacy Settings, Brightness, My Devices, night mode, etc.

## Principles



- Use this button (HOME) to display the most recent home page used; a second press displays the first home page, then press the virtual buttons displayed on the touch screen.



Scroll through the home pages by sliding your finger along the screen to the right or to the left.

Principle of movement in the system  
Depending on the pages displayed on the screen, scroll through the text or the menu (on the left side of the screen) by sliding your finger, as with a smartphone.

## Touch buttons



Display/hide the context menu.



Return to the previous page.

- To change the status of a function, press the description for the corresponding line (change confirmed by

the slider moving to the right/left: function activated/deactivated).



Access to additional information about the function.



Access to a function's settings.



Add/delete shortcuts.

## Physical buttons

Below the infotainment screen are some physical buttons that let the driver access various functions without navigating to them on the screen.



Short press: Opens the home page  
Long press: Opens the Screen Mirroring app.



Short press: Opens the ADAS page  
Long press: Deactivates all ADAS set by the driver as favourite.



Short press: Opens the climate control page.

## Configuring profiles



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Profile"** tab.

The screen displays a "Guest" profile built into the system and allows you to create and personalise several new profiles with or without an associated mobile device.



The **"Guest"** profile has a

default display with the possibility of adding to it and/or returning it to its initial configuration. This profile is built into the system and cannot be deleted.



Each profile created can be

associated with a mobile device of your choice connected via Bluetooth®; the Bluetooth® function of the mobile device must first be activated. The last profile used will be highlighted at each starting.



Select **"Create Profile"**, then follow the procedure.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

The advantage of creating a new profile is to personalise:

- Language, units, Privacy Settings.
- Screen configuration, appearance, i-Toggles (depending on equipment).
- Audio settings, favourite radio stations.
- Lighting, interior ambience (refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section).
- Navigation history, favourite points of interest (POIs), navigation settings.
- Some driving aids and the list of favourites.



To delete a profile, select it from the list of profiles then press the bin.

### Privacy Settings

The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" profile configured by default in "Private Mode", or a profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device.

For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restored.

### "Sharing Data and Location"



This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

#### **i NOTE**

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.

### "Sharing Data"



This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

#### **i NOTE**

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

#### **i NOTE**

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

### "Private Mode"



This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

#### **i NOTE**

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

#### **i NOTE**

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

**i NOTE****Professional purposes**

If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

To change mode, swipe down from the upper edge of the touch screen to display all of the quick settings.



Press this button and select the chosen mode. The mode is highlighted.

or



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"Privacy Settings"**.



Choose the mode.

**Updating the system**

Managing devices remotely and remote updating of software and firmware.

**i NOTE**

Being an integral part of the service used to provide connected services contracts(s), the required management of devices as well as the required updating of the software and firmware associated with the aforementioned connected service will be carried out remotely, in particular using "Over the Air" technology.

To do this, a secure connection via radio network is established between the vehicle and the Manufacturer's device management server each time the ignition is switched on, when a mobile telephone network is available. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the connection configuration must be set to "Connected

vehicle" to enable the connection to the radio network.

Irrespective of a valid subscription to a connected service, the remote management of devices relating to or connected with the security of devices, and the updating of software and firmware, will be carried out when necessary in order to comply with a legal requirement applicable to the Manufacturer (e.g. The applicable law in terms of product liability, the regulations governing e-call) or when necessary to protect the respective vital interests of the vehicle's users and passengers.

The establishment of a secure connection via radio network and the corresponding remote updates are not affected by the privacy settings and are intended to be carried out after being initialised by the user in response to a related notification.

The system can notify the receipt of an update when it is connected to an exterior Wi-Fi network or a mobile telephone network.

Large updates are downloaded only via the Wi-Fi network.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

The availability of an update is notified on the screen at the end of the journey with an option of immediate installation or postponement of installation. The installation time is variable and can take several minutes with a maximum of about 30 minutes. A notification will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update. Update information is available through the "Settings" application.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Updates"** tab.



This button allows you to change the authorisation for automatic downloading of updates via an exterior Wi-Fi network.

**⚠ WARNING**

For safety reasons and because it requires sustained attention on the part of the driver, the installation must be carried out with the ignition on but without starting the engine.

The installation cannot be carried out in the following cases:

- engine running.
- emergency call in progress.
- insufficient battery level.
- when charging for electric vehicles.

If an update has failed or has expired, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

**⚠ WARNING**

The Manufacturer does not charge for the use of this service. However, the use of Wi-Fi and/or mobile telephone networks by your smartphone may incur extra charges if you exceed the data allowance included in your contract. Any associated costs will be billed to you by your mobile telephone operator.

**Profiles**

Several user profiles can be created. Due to the option of creating profiles, the Infotainment system can be fitted to several drivers. Different settings

as well as saved radio stations and destinations will be connected to a specific profile. Thereby, the settings don't need to be adjusted every time another person is driving the vehicle. To display the profile settings, open the settings app and touch the profile menu.

**Creating a profile**

To create a new profile, touch **+**. The following settings can be adjusted for each profile:

- profile name
- avatar
- associated device


Once a new profile is created, the profile settings can be changed at any time by touching .

**Deleting a profile**

To delete a profile, touch next to the corresponding profile and select . The guest profile cannot be deleted. The guest profile is a default profile. It is active when no other profile is created or active.

## Updating the system

When an update is available and ready to install, a message will be displayed at the end of a trip after stopping the vehicle.

Alternatively, open the settings app  and touch the menu for updates to check if an update is available.

If available, pending updates will be displayed on the screen.

It is possible to activate automatic downloads of updates by touching the checkbox. If activated, the updates will be automatically downloaded when the vehicle is connected to an external Wi-Fi network.

The installation of an update will continue even if the vehicle will be left and closed. When the vehicle has started again, a message will be displayed on the screen if the installation of the update has been successfully finished.

When the installation has been failed, a corresponding message will be displayed on the screen. Contact an assistance center.

## Customization

### Widgets



Press and hold the screen from one of the system's home pages.

or



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Customization"** tab.

Press the **"Displays"** field.

A page divided into 2 parts is displayed. Press the HOME button at any time to leave this page.



Press the pencil in the **"Customize Touchscreen"** part.

A representation of the organization of the different home page (**HOME**) Widgets is displayed.

### NOTE

A widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

### Adding a Widget



To add a Widget, press **"Widget"** on the left of the screen.

or



Press one of these buttons on the screen. Select the desired Widget.



Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

### Organizing the Widgets on a home page (HOME)

To move a Widget, press and hold it, then drag it to the desired location.

### Adding a page



To add a page, press **"Page"** on the left of the screen.

1

2

3

4

5


6

7


8

9


10

 Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

### Deleting a Widget

 To move a Widget to the bin, press and hold it, then drag it to the bin.

### Customizing the instrument panel


 Press the pencil in the "Customize Driver Information" part.

The modification of the organization of the different Widget is displayed on the instrument panel in real time.


**NOTE**


A widget is a reduced window of an application or service.

### Adding a Widget


 To add a Widget, press "Widget" on the left of the screen.

or

 Press one of these buttons on the screen.  
Select the desired Widget.

 Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

### Deleting a Widget

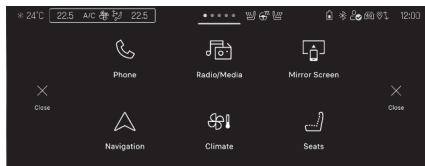
 To move a Widget to the bin, press and hold it, then drag it to the bin.

### Shortcuts

The shortcut page gives you quick access to your favorite apps or functions.




To access shortcuts from any application, swipe from the left or right edge of the screen to the middle.




A shortcut can be linked to a favorite contact, a favorite radio station, climate settings and many more; just tap on a shortcut to open the app.

You can also create shortcuts linked to a specific function, like route guidance to a favorite destination. Return to your shortcuts by sliding a finger from the left or right edge of the screen to the middle.



Now press and hold the shortcut you want to replace. The available shortcut items will be highlighted or listed. Select the desired item by tapping on it, the new shortcut has been created. The shortcuts will be displayed on the pure mode homepage  102.

### Pure Mode

Depending on version, on the left of the customizable pages is a special page with a fixed layout designed to reduce the distractions to the driver in certain driving conditions. See previous section to edit shortcuts. Pure Mode  92

## Screen Operations

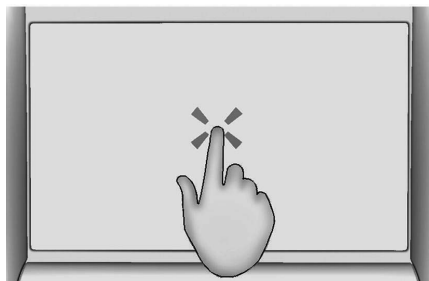
The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

### CAUTION

Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

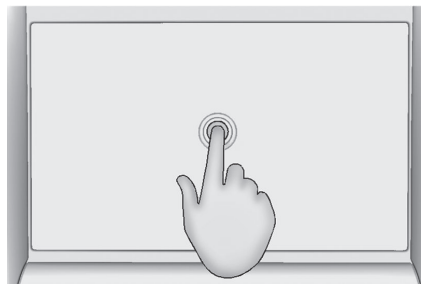
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

### Touch



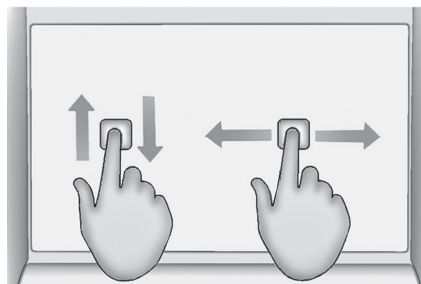
Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.

### Touch and hold



Touch and hold can be used to save radio stations.

### Swipe



Swipe is used to scroll through a menu or to pan the map.

### Returning to the previous screen in a sub-menu

To return to the previous screen, touch ← in the upper part of the screen.

### Displaying and hiding the menu

Within an app, the menu can be displayed and hidden by touching ☰.

## Cybersecurity


### Privacy Settings

The privacy settings can be set for each profile. The following privacy settings can be set:

- share data and location
- share data
- private mode

To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.

When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

The privacy settings can be set via the connectivity menu within the settings app . Alternatively, the privacy

1

2

3

4

5


6

7


8

9

10

settings can be set via the status bar by touching .

## Connected Services

To display the menu for connected services, open the settings app  and touch the corresponding menu entry.

## Radio

### Choosing The Media

#### Changing source



Press the **"Media"** application.



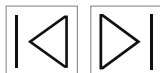
Press this button to change source (radio, audio streaming via a USB socket, Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen®).

#### Selecting a radio station



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.



Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

or



Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

or



Press this button.



Enter the frequency values using the virtual keypad.



Press this button to confirm.

A list of stations is available by pressing the **"Stations"** tab.



Press **"Mute"** to activate/deactivate the sound.

### WARNING

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a

charger with USB socket connected to the 12 V socket.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any malfunction of the system.

### Storing a radio station

Select a station.



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.



Press the **"Radio Favorites"** button.



Storing takes place via a short or long press on one of these buttons, or a long press on an existing favourite radio station, which will be replaced.



Press this button to return to the previous page.

### Automatic search for radio stations

Via the **"Media"** application.



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Stations"** tab.

The search is carried out automatically.



Using the steering-mounted controls, press and hold this button.



The search is carried out automatically.

### Activating radio station tracking

The system changes frequency automatically to obtain better reception.



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.



Activate **"Radio Station Tracking"**.

The lighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

### Changing the waveband



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.



Press this button to change the waveband (FM - AM - DAB) according to the country of sale.

### Activating traffic announcements

This function gives priority to listening to **Traffic announcements** alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message.

While traffic information is being broadcast, the current radio station is automatically interrupted so that the message can be heard. Normal radio listening resumes as soon as the message is finished.



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Player"** tab.



Activate **"Traffic Announcement (TA)"**.

The lighting of the slider confirms that the function is activated.

### Audio streaming

The streaming function allows you to listen to the audio stream coming from the smartphone(s) connected via Bluetooth®, USB (iPod® type) or Mirror Screen®.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of the system.

If playback does not start, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**i NOTE**

Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

**Playing a track**



Press the **"Media"** application.



If several devices are connected, press this button to select one.

Once the device is connected, browsing through the files is possible by pressing the **"Playlist"** or **"Library"** button.



Short press: go to the previous/ next track.



Long press: fast-forward/rewind in a track.



Repeat the current title or the list of selected titles.



Random track playback.



Sound deactivation/reactivation.

**Configuring audio and radio settings**

Audio settings can be accessed in 2 different ways.

Via the **Media** application



Press the **"Media"** application.

In the list, select the **"Settings"** tab.

Or Via the **Settings** application



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Audio and Radio"** tab.

It is possible to configure:

- Sound Settings.

- Radio Settings.
- Volume Settings.

**Information and advice**

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices or Apple® devices via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Devices are managed using the audio system controls.

The system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg, .mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

".wma" files must be of the WMA 9 standard.

The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

**i NOTE**

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

## Multimedia System

### General Information

**i NOTE**

The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.

**⚠ WARNING**

The system is protected in such a way as to operate only on your vehicle. For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out

with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth®.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to Mirror Screen (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

Some functions cannot be accessible when driving.

### Status bar

The status bar is the top bar on the screen. It can indicate the following:

- time
- outside temperature
- Wi-Fi connection status
- Bluetooth activation
- mobile reception
- activated functions, e.g. heated steering wheel

## Steering Wheel Controls

### Voice control:



Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, voice commands of the smartphone connected using Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen® (Apple®CarPlay®/Android Auto) via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute the sound: long press on the decrease volume button.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



**Incoming call** (short press): accept the call.

**Call in progress** (short press): hang up.

**Incoming call** (long press): refuse the incoming call.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

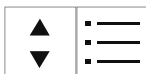
8

9

10

**Out of call** (short press): access the call log of the telephone connected via Bluetooth®.

**Mirror Screen® connected** (short press): access the projected view of the telephone application of your Mirror Screen® equipment.



**Radio:** automatic search for the previous/ next station (in the list of radio stations sorted by name or by frequencies).

**Media:** previous/next track, movement in the lists.

**Phone:** browse the telephone's call log.

**Short press:** validate a selection. Out of selection, display the lists.

## Applications



From the home page, press this button to access the applications wall.

## NOTE

From any page, press the touch screen with three or more fingers to display the applications wall.



### Help

Access the handbook and watch tutorials.



### Media

Select an audio source or radio station.



### Mirror Screen®

Smartphone connected with Mirror Screen®: access to the projected view of Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Smartphone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a smartphone.



### Navigation

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



### Voice commands

Use the system or smartphone voice recognition via the system



### Phone

Telephone not connected: access the menu allowing you to connect a telephone.

Telephone connected: access the call log, contacts and telephone settings. Two connected telephones: access the contents of the priority telephone with the possibility of changing the priority of the telephone.



### Settings

Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

## Passenger side apps

Depending on version, the infotainment system features a section designed to be used by the front passenger.

It features a climate control dock and space for a widget. Scroll through the widgets by sliding your finger along the screen up or down.

## Voice commands

### First steps

The voice recognition service offers a choice of several languages (e.g. French, German, English (UK), English (US), Arabic, Brazilian, Canadian, Chinese, Danish, Spanish, Hebrew, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Mexican, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Swedish, Czech, Turkish) available with the cellular network and in line with the language chosen and previously configured in the system.

### Information - Using the system



When voice commands are activated, say your command after the audible signal.

For commands in several stages, interaction takes place with the system to complete the initial request. Some commands self-validate after 7 seconds.

If the system has not taken your command into account, it will indicate

this by a voice message and an on-screen display.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Voice Assistant"** tab.



Activate/Deactivate:

- **"Listen for (Hey Opel)"**: to invoke the voice recognition using the keyword **"Hey Opel"**.
- **"Vocal Barge-In"**: to allow user to speak over spoken dialog prompts and be recognized.
- **"Data Usage"**: to authorise our supplier to re-use your data in order to let him globally improve its capabilities in term of voice recognition and voice assistance.

### **i** NOTE

#### Voice Assistant/Data Usage

Vehicle's location and voice recordings are not concerned; only textual transcriptions of your conversations

with the voice assistant are kept after to be pseudonymised.

### Opening voice recognition



Voice commands can be used on any screen page, provided there are no other sources which take priority in use (reverse, emergency or assistance call, telephone call, other smartphone voice recognition already launched).

Choice of opening voice recognition:

- Say **"Hey Opel"**.

or

- Press the button located on the steering wheel.

or

- Press the touch screen button.

### **⚠** WARNING

To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

- **Use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- After opening voice recognition with the steering wheel-mounted button or the button on the touch screen, always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before talking. No "beep" sounds when voice recognition is opened using "Hey Opel".
- For optimal operation, it is recommended that you close the windows and the sunroof (depending on equipment) to avoid any external interference, and switch the ventilation off.
- Before speaking the voice commands, ask the other passengers not to speak.

**⚠ WARNING**

To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

- **Use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**

- After opening voice recognition with the steering wheel-mounted button or the button on the touch screen, always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before talking. No "beep" sounds when voice recognition is opened using "OK Peugeot".
- For optimal operation, it is recommended that you close the windows and the sunroof (depending on equipment) to avoid any external interference, and switch the ventilation off.
- Before speaking the voice commands, ask the other passengers not to speak.



Voice command example for air conditioning:

- "raise the fan speed"
- "Turn on air conditioning"
- "i'm too hot"



Voice command example for radio and media:

- "I want to listen to michael jackson"

"switch to radio"

"tune to 88.5"



Voice command example for navigation:

"navigate home"

"Navigate me to gabrielle's house"

"search for public parking nearby"

**i NOTE**

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.



Voice command example for telephone:

"Call Matthew's mobile"

"call 0113 345 9869"

"Call jonathan"

**i NOTE**

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth®, a pop-up appears: **"Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®"**, and the voice session will be closed.

**Chat GPT**

Chat GPT is part of the Connected Services and if the user subscribes to it, it will enable an extended range of functions.

**Navigation**

**Navigation home screen**

**(depending on equipment)**

Press to display the navigation home screen.



Search for an address or name.



Display the main menu.



Select 3D or 2D display mode.



Press repeatedly to select sound behavior.



Zoom in or out. This can also be done by placing two fingers on the screen and move them away or towards each other.

**Main menu**



Select **"Go home"** using an address previously saved in **"Add home"**.



Select **"Go to work"** using an address previously saved in **"My places"**.



Select **"Recent destinations"** to display the latest destinations searched.



Select **"Current trip"** to open another menu and perform various actions for the current planned route.



Select **"My places"** for quick access to saved places as well as favorite destinations.



Select **"My trips"** to display your favorite routes.



Select **"Parking"** to display the various parking options in the area.



Select **"Service station"** to display the different service stations on the current route or near the current location.



Select **"TomTom service"** to check the network status.



Select **"Settings"** to enter the vehicle type and to customize the display, voice instructions, map options, trip planning, sounds and alerts, and system information.



Select this button to display details on software versions as well as legal information. Details of the Open Source software libraries used and their license URLs.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

**i NOTE**

Regular connection to a secure Wi-Fi access point automatically updates the installed mapping globally. The mapping is also updated using a cellular network, depending on version, country of sale, the vehicle's level of equipment, as well as the subscription to connected services and options. However, using your smartphone's Wi-Fi and/or cellular networks may incur additional charges if you exceed your data plan. These charges, if any, will be passed on to your telephone operator's bill.

**EV Routing**

**i NOTE**

EV Routing is part of the Connected Services if the user subscribes to it.

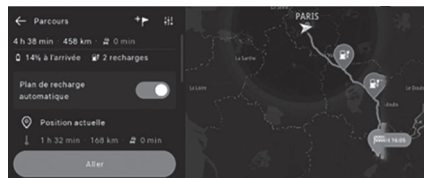
The embedded EV routing system, part of the navigation system, allows for the planning of the most efficient journeys, taking into account the charging stops

and the required charging time, details on each charging station as well as the range of the vehicle and traffic information.

EV Routing also adapts when conditions change, e.g. deviations, traffic, and provides the most efficient journeys possible.

To program a journey using the EV Routing:

- Say "OK Opel".
  - Say the address of your destination.
- or
- Type in the address of your destination.



**Navigation settings**

Open the **Navigation settings** page.

On the **Map & Display page**, the **Range visualization**, which shows the remaining range on the map can be enabled/disabled.

On the **Planning & Travel** page, the desired level of charge when arriving at a charger and the desired state of charge when arriving at a destination can be set.

On the **Vehicle Setting** page, the charging station's socket can be selected, depending on the cable present onboard.

**e-Routes by Free2Move Charge**

e-Routes by Free2Move Charge is a powerful travel planner smartphone application. It is designed to guide the driver and optimize trips using real-time vehicle data, suggesting the best routes based on the state of the charging stations along the way.

e-Routes is compatible with Android Auto and Apple®CarPlay®, and can be used from the vehicle's touchscreen.

**Connectivity**

**Connecting a wired device by USB**

The USB connection of a mobile device allows it to be recharged. It makes its authorized media content available to the system (Media content of iPod® type).



Only one USB socket will allow a Mirror Screen connection (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto) for the compatible connected mobile devices and to use some of the device's applications on the touch screen.

For more information on the USB socket compatible with the Mirror Screen® function, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort - Fittings" section. The mobile device is in charging mode when connected with the USB cable.

**i NOTE**

It is recommended that you use your device's original USB cables, preferably with a short cable to ensure optimum performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

**Wi-Fi connection**

The system has an external Wi-Fi connection mode for performing system updates.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"Wi-Fi"**.



Activate/Deactivate **"Wi-Fi"**.

The system starts a search for nearby Wi-Fi networks. This may take a few seconds.

Select the Wi-Fi network to connect to and enter its password.

**⚠ WARNING**

To protect your system, only networks with a sufficient level of security are allowed to connect. WPA2 encryption level, equivalent to a domestic level, is required.

**i NOTE**

Any network already connected to the system will reconnect automatically as soon as it is detected by the system and after having previously activated the Wi-Fi function.

**i NOTE**

The Wi-Fi connection of the system to a device already connected using a Mirror Screen® wireless connection is not possible. In this case, favor a Mirror Screen® connection using the USB socket.

**Device management**

For each device already connected to the system using a wireless connection (Bluetooth® or wireless Mirror Screen® connection), it is possible to determine a preferred connection mode (depending on the functions the device can support). It is therefore possible to determine whether the device should be connected using a wireless Bluetooth® connection or a wireless Mirror Screen® connection

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

each time the system is started once the profile is chosen.



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"My Devices"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press this button to manage the connection of a device.

Choose a connection type then confirm this choice by pressing **"APPLY"**.

### Deleting a device



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"My Devices"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press this button.  
Press **"DELETE"**.

Confirm by pressing **"YES"**.

### ⚠ WARNING

Some devices that have just been deleted from the system request a connection, refuse this request.

### Connected Services

Multiple connected services are accessible via app, online or inside the vehicle.

### 📘 NOTE

Connected services are not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

### 📘 NOTE

Full functionality of connected services is subject to registration and proper activation.

Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information as well as vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts.

Services accessible within the vehicle also include emergency call and assistance call. These functions are automatically activated. Terms and conditions apply.

Emergency call ➡ 193.

Correct connectivity settings and privacy settings are necessary to establish the connection to the available connected services.

### Connectivity Settings

To display the system settings menu, open the settings app ⚙ select 🌐.

Then select the connectivity menu.

The following settings can be managed:

- wireless devices: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth or phone projection) and search for nearby devices
- Wi-Fi networks: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network
- privacy settings: activate or deactivate data and location sharing for authorized services

## Privacy Settings

The privacy settings can be set for each profile. This function is used with a "Guest" and/or "Driver" profiles:


- pre-configured by default in "Private Mode", or
- to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device.


For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy settings saved will be restored. The following privacy settings can be set:

- share data and location
- share data
- private mode

To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.

When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

The privacy settings can be set via the connectivity menu within the settings app .

Alternatively, the privacy settings can be set via the status bar by touching .

## Sharing Data and Location



This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

### NOTE

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.

## Sharing Data



This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

### NOTE

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

### NOTE

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or

to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

## Private Mode



This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle

### NOTE

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

### NOTE

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

### NOTE

If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

### Bluetooth® connection

Connecting a mobile device to the vehicle's system via Bluetooth® provides access to its contents and its "Media" streaming. It also enables the Phone function to be activated.

The connection can be initiated either from the mobile device's Bluetooth® menu or from the vehicle's system, which requires opening the "My Devices" menu for the first connection.

#### **i** NOTE

In some cases, you will need to unlock your device and check the authorization to synchronize contacts and recent calls. Some features may not be supported by your device. For information on the partial or full compatibility of device models or smartphones, please connect to the Brand's national website.

### Pairing procedure from a device



From the Bluetooth® menu on your mobile device, select the system's name from the list of detected devices.

#### **i** NOTE

In order to make your system's Bluetooth® visible, first open the "My Devices" menu on the system.

Continue the first connection procedure proposed by the system and on the device.

For example: validating pairing codes.

### Pairing procedure from the system



Press the "Settings" application.

In the list, select the "Connectivity" tab.



Select "My Devices".



Select the name of the mobile device that you want to connect, from:

– The list of known devices (if the device has already been connected to the system).

or

– The list of detected devices (if the device has never been connected to the system or previously deleted from the system).

#### **i** NOTE

A mobile device already connected to the system will be able to reconnect automatically when the vehicle is started, once the user profile has been selected. Automatic reconnection is put on hold as soon as the "My Devices" menu is opened.

This is to allow the system to make its Bluetooth® visible for the connection of a new device.

The system is disconnected when the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off.

### Automatic reconnection

The system allows automatic reconnection of devices already connected and detected when a user profile is selected.

The priority reconnected devices are those which have been linked to the selected user profile or, failing this, the last connected devices.

## Screen Mirroring

The phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from a smartphone on the Infotainment screen and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.


Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with the smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

## Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.

Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

## Connecting the smartphone


Connect the phone to the USB port  63 or connect the phone via Bluetooth.

Make sure phone projection is activated in the connectivity settings.

## Starting phone projection

Touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto app on the Infotainment screen. The phone projection screen displayed depends on the smartphone and software version.

## Using the voice assistant of the smartphone

Press and hold  on the steering wheel and say the corresponding activation voice command of the smartphone's voice assistant to use the voice assistant of the smartphone via the Infotainment system.

## Phone


### Making a call


To make a call, choose one of the contacts from the contact list, dial a telephone number via the keyboard or select a number from the recent calls list.

### Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a message on the Infotainment screen.

To accept an incoming call or hang up an active call, touch the corresponding

button on the Infotainment screen or press  on the steering wheel.

To refuse an incoming call, touch the corresponding button on the Infotainment screen or press and hold  on the steering wheel.

## Settings

### Configuring the screen display

Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Customization"** tab.

It is possible to configure:

- the screen colors associated with the interior ambient lighting. Refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.
- the sound ambiance.
- the visual welcome and goodbye animations.
- the screen transition animations.

### Managing the system connectivity



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

It is possible to manage:

- The Bluetooth® connection.
- The Mirror Screen® smartphone connections (Apple®CarPlay®/Android Auto).
- The Wi-Fi connection.
- The privacy mode.

### Configuring the system



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"System"** tab.

It is possible to configure:

- the language.
- the date & time.
- the unit of distance and consumption (kWh/100 miles - miles, mi/kWh - miles, km/kWh - km).
- the temperature unit (Fahrenheit, Celsius).

It is also possible to reset the system configuration.

### Selecting the language



Select **"Language"** to change the language.



Press the desired language.



Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

### Setting the date and time



Select **"Date and Time"** to modify the date and time.



Press the desired time/date.



**"Automatic Date and Time"** is activated by default, so that the setting is made automatically according to your geolocation.

To adjust manually, deactivate **"Automatic Date and Time"**.

Press the **"Select Time Zone"** field then define a time zone.



Press the back arrow to return to the previous page.

Press the **"Set Time"** line then set the time.



Press this button to confirm.

Press the **"Set Date"** line then set the date.



Press this button to confirm.



Select the Time Format field (12-hour / 24-hour).



Select the Date Format field (MM-DD-YY / YYYY-MM-DD / DD/MM/YYYY).

### **i** NOTE

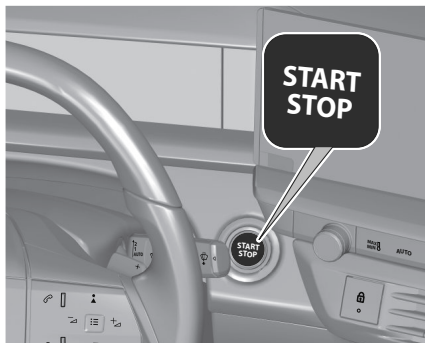
The system does not automatically change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

# STARTING & OPERATING

## Starting And Stopping The Engine

### Starting the engine

#### Power button



The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

#### Engine start

Operate the brake pedal and press Start/Stop.

#### BEV

1. Depress brake pedal.

2. Press **Start/Stop** button for approx. two seconds.
3. Keep the brake pedal depressed until READY is displayed in the cluster and an acoustic signal is given.

#### Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

Press **Start/Stop** without operating the brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

#### Engine and ignition off

Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened.

#### Steering wheel lock

Depending on version, the steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- the vehicle is stationary.
- the ignition has been switched off.

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch the ignition on power mode or start the engine directly.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

In the event of a fault of the key battery, the steering wheel lock remains engaged. Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing it and do not tow it.

#### Operation in case of failure

If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, a message may be displayed in the cluster.



Hold the electronic key at the marking on the steering column cover as shown in the illustration.

On vehicles with manual transmission, select neutral gear, operate the clutch pedal, the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, move the selector to position **P**, operate the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible.

For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system.

## Emergency shut off during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press **Start/Stop** for five seconds.

### DANGER

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.

## Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -30 °C for petrol engines.

Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery.

With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a

warming phase of approx. five minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

## Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

## Driving hints

### Control of the vehicle

#### Never coast with engine not running

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others. All systems function during an Autostop.

Stop-start system  122.

#### Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Use only floor mats, which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side.

## Steering

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

## New vehicle running-in

Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and engine oil evaporating off the exhaust system.

Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher. Additionally, the cleaning process of the exhaust filter may take place more often.

Exhaust filter → 132.

## Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

Press Start/Stop without operating the brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

## Engine and ignition off

Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened.

## Leaving the vehicle

### WARNING

Only leave the vehicle with propulsion system off, parking brake applied and depending on transmission first gear engaged or **P** selected.

## Parking

### WARNING

Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.

- Apply the parking brake.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or press P. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

- If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or press P. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close the windows.
- Switch off the engine.
- Switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Depending on version, turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

## Steering wheel lock

Depending on version, the steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- the vehicle is stationary.
- the ignition has been switched off.

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch the ignition on power mode or start the engine directly.

### WARNING

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9



10

## Stop & Start Automatic Function

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam.





### Activation

By default, the system is activated when the ignition is switched on. The system can be manually activated in the Information Display. Press  and activate the system in the Information Display. Information Display  91.

The activation of the system is confirmed by a message.

### Deactivation


Press  and deactivate the system in the Information Display. Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of  on the cluster and the display of a message.

### Autostop

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically. The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on. The stop-start system will be disabled on inclines of 12% or more.

### Indication


An Autostop is indicated by control indicator . During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

### Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is not too low or too high.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Autostop will be inhibited if these conditions are not met. In addition, Autostop may be inhibited:

- by certain settings of the climate control system  86
- immediately after higher speed driving

- in the case of new vehicle running-in
- by active demisting
- in the case of steep ascending or descending slopes
- if the vehicle has not exceeded 10 km/h since the last engine start

In these cases, the icon on the cluster flashes a few seconds and then goes off.

### NOTE

The Autostop may be inhibited for several hours after a battery replacement or reconnection.

### Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

### Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electric features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

### Restart of the engine by the driver

After the engine has been restarted, an Autostop is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 8 km/h. The engine is restarted in the following cases:

- brake pedal released while the selector lever in position **D** or **M**
- brake pedal released or selector lever in position **N** when selector lever is moved to position **D** or **M**
- selector lever moved to position **R**

### Restart of the engine by the stop-start system

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system:

- stop-start system manually deactivated
- driver's seat belt unfastened and driver's door opened
- engine temperature too low
- charging level of vehicle battery below a defined level
- brake vacuum not sufficient


- vehicle is driven or rolls at least at walking speed
- climate control system requests engine start
- air conditioning manually switched on

If an electric accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

## Brakes

### Parking brake

#### WARNING

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator  illuminate constantly when electric parking brake is applied.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10



### Applying when vehicle is stationary

Pull the switch (P). If the control indicator (P) illuminates, the electric parking brake is applied.

Control indicator (P) ⇔ 76.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without the engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

### Releasing

Switch on ignition. Keep the brake pedal depressed and then push the switch (P). If the control indicator (P) extinguishes, the electric parking brake is released.


### Drive away function

Vehicles with manual transmission: Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated. It is not possible when switch (P) is pulled at the same time.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: Engaging **R**, **D** or **M** and then depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated. It is not possible when switch (P) is pulled at the same time.

### Braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch (P) is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle. As soon as the switch (P) is released, braking will be stopped. The anti-lock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control stabilize the vehicle while the switch (P) is kept pulled. If an error of the electric parking

brake occurs, a warning message is displayed on the cluster. If the anti-lock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control fail, one or both indicators (ABS) and  illuminate on the cluster. In this case, stability during deceleration of the vehicle can only be maintained with repeated short pulls of the switch until the vehicle is immobilized.

### Automatic operation

Automatic operation includes automatic application and automatic release of the electric parking brake.

The electric parking brake can also be applied or released manually by using the switch (P).

Automatic application:

- The electric parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched off.
- (P) illuminates on the cluster and message is displayed to confirm the application.

Automatic release:

### **i NOTE**

The automatic release of the electric parking brake is inhibited as long as the driver's door is open.

- Parking brake releases automatically on driving off.
- (P) extinguishes on the cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the release.

### **Deactivation of automatic operation**

In certain situations, e.g. in extreme cold weather conditions or when towing, it may be necessary to deactivate the automatic operation of the electric parking brake.

1. Start the engine.
2. If the parking brake is released, pull the switch (P) to apply the parking brake.
3. Take your foot off the brake pedal.
4. Press the switch (P) for at least ten seconds and maximum 15 seconds.
5. Release the switch (P).
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal.

7. Pull the switch (P) for two seconds.

The deactivation of the automatic operation is confirmed by the illumination of (P) on the cluster. Now, the

<sup>AUTO</sup>  
(P)  
<sub>OFF</sub>

electric parking brake can only be applied and released manually.

To reactivate the automatic operation, repeat the steps described above.

The automatic operation can also be deactivated temporarily, i.e. until the next ignition cycle:

1. With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, depress the brake pedal and move the gear selector to the neutral position.
2. While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.
3. Take your foot off the brake pedal and switch on the ignition.
4. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the electric parking brake to release it.
5. Take your foot off the brake pedal and switch off the ignition.

To revert to normal operation, depress the brake pedal and switch on the engine.

Automatic transmission ⇨ 127.

### **Fault**

Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator (P)! and by a message displayed on the cluster.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 85.

Control indicator (P) flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.

### **Brake Assist**

If the brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.

Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal. Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

### **Regenerative Braking**

#### **MHEV**

When lifting off the accelerator pedal, the hybrid system will contribute to the

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

deceleration of the vehicle and recover some of the energy into the battery.

### WARNING

The battery's capacity may be exceeded after prolonged energy recovery times, and the braking effect reduced. The driver must not rely on the system to slow down and be ready to use the brake pedal at any time.

## PHEV

### Using the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery. This energy recovery also reduces the use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

### NOTE

The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

### WARNING

In some situations (e.g. battery with high level of charge, extreme temperatures, extended use of regenerative braking e.g. prolonged downhill driving), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.

**The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.**

### Using B Mode

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle decelerates more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal.

The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

### WARNING

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle only causes the brake lights to come on above a certain level.

- Use the **B** button on the Drive selector to activate/deactivate the mode.

When the mode is active, D on the instrument panel is replaced with B. The mode status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

## BEV

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle decelerates more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal. The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

**⚠ WARNING**

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle only causes the brake lights to come on above a certain level.

There are three levels of braking, controlled by using the paddles behind the steering wheel:

- +** Decreases regenerative braking effect.
- Increases regenerative braking effect.

For each level of deceleration, the information appears on the dashboard in the form of one or many more "down" arrows close to D.

**The deceleration level is saved when the ignition is switched off.**

**i NOTE**

If the conditions for the system to function are not met, a message is displayed on the cluster.

**⚠ WARNING**

In some situations (e.g. battery with high charge level, prolonged use of regenerative braking e.g. extended downhill driving, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.

**The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.**

**With the brake pedal**

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery. This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

**i NOTE**

The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

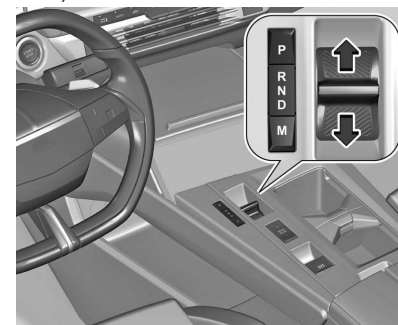
## Active Emergency braking

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimizing the braking pressure. It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency. ➔ 152

## Transmission

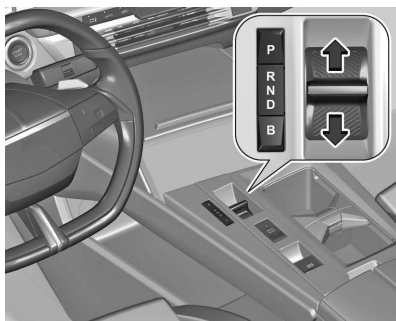
### Automatic transmission (MHEV)

The automatic transmission permits automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) or manual gear shifting (manual mode).



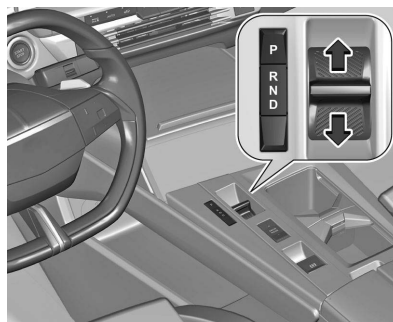
- P:** park mode
- R:** reverse mode
- N:** neutral mode
- D:** automatic mode
- M:** manual mode

## Automatic transmission (PHEV)



- P:** park mode
- R:** reverse mode
- N:** neutral mode
- D:** automatic mode
- B:** automatic mode with increased regenerative braking

## Drive selector (BEV)



- P:** park mode
- R:** reverse mode
- N:** neutral mode
- D:** automatic mode

Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time. When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released

### Park mode P

To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary. In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.

To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

**P** is automatically engaged when

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h
- **N** has been selected for some time

### Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

### CAUTION

Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

### Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

### Automatic mode D

Normal forward drive mode.

## Manual mode M

In this mode, it is possible to change gears manually using the steering wheel paddles.

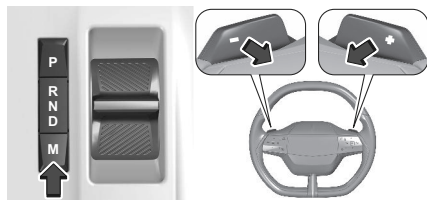
Manual mode M can only be selected if D is engaged.

The selected gear is indicated in the cluster.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the cluster.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Press button **M** to select/deselect Manual mode



- + Selects the next gear.
- Selects the previous gear.

The paddles can also be used to enter manual mode directly.

### Gear shift indication

▲ or ▼ with a number of a higher or lower gear is indicated, when upshifting or downshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

### Mode B

This mode activates increased regenerative braking by releasing the accelerator pedal, with no need to depress the brake pedal.

The brake pedal will be used only for emergency situations.

When in mode **D**, press **B** to activate or deactivate the mode. **B** will be indicated in the cluster. Regenerative Braking ⇄ 126

Mode **B** is deactivated by default when ignition is switched on.


### Electronic driving programs

Following a cold start, the operating temperature program increases engine

speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature. Special programs automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.

In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off.

### Fault

In the event of a fault,  illuminates a message is displayed on the cluster.

Vehicle messages ⇄ 85

Do not drive faster than 100 km/h. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Interruption of power supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, it is not possible to select another mode when **P** is engaged.

Towing the vehicle ⇄ 207

If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads.

Jump starting ⇄ 203

If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Free wheeling

In certain situations, e.g., in an automatic car wash etc., it is necessary that the wheels can move freely when the engine is switched off.

To enable free wheeling, the vehicle has to be stationary, the engine has to be running and the driver's door has to be closed.

1. Depress the brake pedal and select **N**.
2. Within five seconds, depress and hold the brake pedal.
3. Switch off the ignition and move the selector forwards or backwards.
4. Take your foot off the brake pedal and switch on ignition.
5. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the the electric parking brake to release it.
6. Take your foot off the brake pedal and switch off ignition.

A message is displayed in the cluster indicating that the wheels are unblocked for the next 15 minutes. To revert to normal operation, depress the brake pedal and switch on the engine.

## Hybrid 48 V (MHEV):

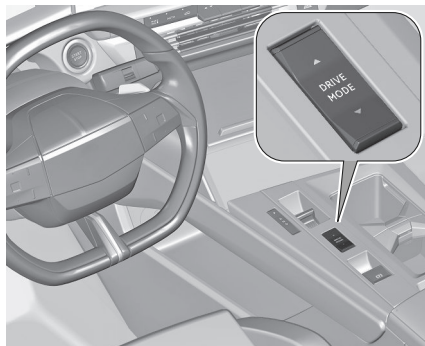
No free wheeling with the engine switched off.

## Drive Modes

To select the respective drive mode, use the shown toggle switch.

Propulsion types ⇨ 6

PHEV: When entering low emission zones, the vehicle automatically switches to electric drive mode, if the state of charge of the traction battery is sufficient.



## Hybrid 48V

The following drive modes are selectable.

## Sport mode

This mode allows to obtain a more dynamic driving with action on the power steering, accelerator and gear changes. Depending on version, it is possible to display the vehicle's dynamic settings on the instrument panel and activate / deactivate the display color.

## Normal mode

The settings in this mode are set by default. Every time the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected.

## Eco mode

Reduces fuel consumption by optimizing the operation of the heating and air conditioning and, depending on version, the accelerator pedal, the automatic transmission and the gear shifting indicator.

While coasting the vehicle, the engine is idling with reduced engine brake.

## PHEV

The following drive modes are selectable.

**Sport mode**

This mode combines the power of the combustion engine and the electric engine. This mode is fully electric driving for speeds below 30 km/h.

**Hybrid mode**

This mode optimizes the vehicle's fuel consumption by simultaneous or alternation operation of internal combustion engine and electrical engine depending on driving conditions and driving style. In this mode, driving 100% electrically is possible if the charge level of the high voltage battery is sufficient and acceleration requirements are modest.

**Electric mode**

In this mode, the vehicle is driven by the electric engine only. Electric propulsion is available for speeds below 135 km/h. This mode is selected by default when the vehicle is started. If the conditions do not allow this mode, a message is displayed and hybrid mode is selected.

**BEV**

The following drive modes are selectable.

**Sport mode**

The settings in this mode allow more dynamic driving. The vehicle's dynamic parameters can be displayed in the cluster.

This mode allows maximum electric engine power output.

**Normal mode**

The settings in this mode are set by default. Every time the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected. To optimize range, electric engine power output is reduced.

**Eco mode**

Reduces fuel consumption by optimizing the operation of the heating and air conditioning and, depending on version, the accelerator pedal, the automatic transmission and the gear shifting indicator. While coasting the vehicle, the engine is idling with reduced engine brake. To optimize range, electric engine power output and heating are reduced.

**4WD mode**

All-wheel drive is available for speeds below 135 km/h.

The all-wheel drive mode improves the grip of the vehicle. The vehicle is driven by front and rear axle.

**NOTE**

In **Normal** and **Eco** modes, it is always possible to obtain maximum torque and power by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.


**Engine Exhaust****⚠ DANGER**

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled. If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop. Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

## Exhaust filter

### Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.


The start of saturation of the exhaust filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of , accompanied by a message in the cluster.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h until the control indicator extinguishes.

#### NOTE

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, water vapor can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behavior of the vehicle or the environment.

### Cleaning process not possible

If  stays on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this

indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low.

The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

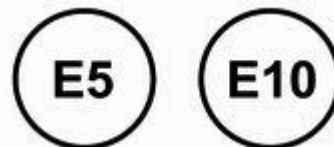
#### NOTE

Fuel grades other than those listed could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

## Fuel

### Fuel for petrol engines



Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent.

The engine is capable of running with fuel that contains up to 10% ethanol (e.g. named E10).

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating. A lower octane rating can reduce engine power and torque and slightly increases fuel consumption.

#### NOTE

The only petrol additives authorized for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

#### CAUTION

Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as

manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Use of fuel with a lower octane rating than the lowest possible rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

The engine specific requirements regarding octane rating are given in the engine data overview. A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the requirement. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

## Refueling

### ⚠ DANGER

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers. Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

### ⚠ DANGER

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.  
If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

PHEV vehicles have a pressurized fuel system. To open the fuel flap, first press the 'FUEL FLAP' button located to the left of the steering wheel. This releases the pressure, so you can then push the flap to open it. A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe the pump nozzles of the filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

### ⚠ CAUTION

In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

The fuel filler flap is located at the right rear side of the vehicle.



The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap. To open the flap easily, press at the spot marked by the two stripes in the center rear area. To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

Place the nozzle in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

To refuel, switch on the pump nozzle. After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

 **CAUTION**

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise.  
Close the flap and allow it to engage.

### Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps.

### General information

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The determination of fuel consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No.715/2007 and No.2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

The specification of CO<sub>2</sub> emission is also a constituent of the directive.


The figures given must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle. Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions. All values are based on the EU base model with standard equipment. The calculation of fuel consumption takes into account the vehicle's kerb weight, ascertained in accordance with the regulations. Optional equipment may result in slightly higher fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emission levels and a lower maximum speed.

## Fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions

All values are combined values under WLTP condition.

48V Hybrid: The fuel consumption is within a range of 5.5 to 5.6 l/100km and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions within a range of 123 to 127 g/km

PHEV: The fuel consumption is within a range of 0.8 to 0.9 l/100km and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions within a range of 19 to 21 g/km

Propulsion types  5

## General information

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents. The determination of fuel consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No.715/2007 and No.2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

The specification of CO<sub>2</sub> emission is also a constituent of the directive. The figures given must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle. Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions. All values are based on the EU base model with standard equipment. The calculation of fuel consumption takes into account the vehicle's kerb weight, ascertained in accordance with the regulations. Optional equipment may result in slightly higher fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emission levels and a lower maximum speed.

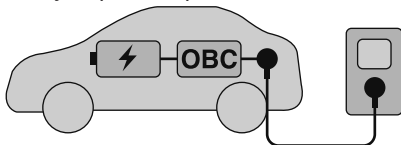
## Charging

### General information

#### WARNING

Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions.  
If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.

Charging the vehicle's high voltage battery depends upon several factors:



- high voltage battery of the vehicle
- internal onboard charger (OBC)
- charging cable
- external charging device

The charging cable connects the vehicle with an external charging device providing electric power. This may be a domestic electrical outlet, a

**Green'Up** socket, a wall box or a public charging station.

The high voltage battery can be charged with direct current (DC) only. When charging from a domestic electrical outlet, a wall box or an alternating current (AC) charging station, AC has to be converted into DC. This is done by the vehicle's onboard charger.

**PHEV:** The onboard charger (single-phase) is available with 3.7 kW or 7.4 kW.

**BEV:** The onboard charger (3-phase) is available with 11 kW or 22kW.

Propulsion types ⇨ 6.

The speed of charging the vehicle's high voltage battery depends upon the weakest element of the charging chain. To achieve the maximum charging speed, charging cable and charging device have to be attuned to each other.

#### NOTE

Make sure that the charging cable used fits to the vehicle's onboard charger.

Charging types ⇨ 136.

#### WARNING

In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it. Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire!  
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Electric power consumption and range

The electric power consumption (combined under WLTP condition) is within a range of 15.0 to 14.0 kWh/ 100 km.

The all electric range is up to 67 km

**(PHEV Gen 1)** / 85 km

**(PHEV Gen 2)** / 454 km (BEV).

**(BEV High Range)** / 700km

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The determination of electric power consumption is regulated by directive R

(EC) No. 715/2007 and No. 2017/1151  
(in the latest applicable version).

## Charging types

There are different types of charging the vehicle's high voltage battery. Charging times refer to charging an empty battery until it is completely charged.

### Charging at wall boxes / AC charging stations

A wall box / AC charging station may or may not provide a charging cable which has to be connected to the vehicle's charging port.



**PHEV:** Charging time takes approx. three hours and 25 minutes with the 3.7 kW onboard charger and 16 A.

For the 7.4 kW onboard charger with 32 A, charging time takes approx. one hour and 40 minutes.

**BEV:** Charging time takes approx. five hours with the 11 kW onboard charger.

### Charging at DC charging stations



Up to approx. 80% of battery capacity may be charged in approx. 30 minutes at a charging power of 100 kW. 30 minutes at a charging power of 150-160 kW depending on the type of HV battery in the vehicle.

### Charging at Green'Up outlets

The high voltage battery can be charged at a **Green'Up** outlet.

Connect the charging cable to the vehicle's charging port and to the Green'Up outlet.

**PHEV:** Charging time takes approx. three hours and 55 minutes.

**BEV:** Charging time takes approx. 16 hours and 35 minutes.

### Charging at domestic electrical outlets



The vehicle's high voltage battery can be charged at a domestic electrical outlet. Connect the charging cable to the vehicle's charging port and to the domestic electrical outlet.

**PHEV:** Charging time takes approx. seven hours and five minutes.

**BEV:** Charging time takes approx. 30 hours.

### Charging cable

Depending on the charging type, different charging cables are used.

#### **WARNING**

Improper use of portable charging cables may cause a fire, electrical shock, or burns, and may result in damage to property, serious injury, or death.

- Do not use extension cables, multi-outlet power strips, splitters, grounding adaptors, surge protectors, or similar devices.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is worn or damaged, or one that will not hold the plug firmly in place.
- Do not immerse the charging cable into any liquid.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is not properly grounded.
- Do not use an electrical socket that is on a circuit with other electrical loads.

### WARNING

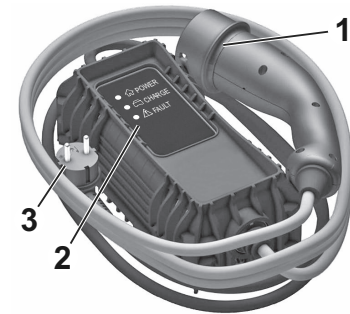
Read all the safety warnings and instructions before using this product. Failure to follow the warnings and the instructions may result in electric shock, fire, and / or serious injury. Never leave children unattended near the vehicle while the vehicle is charging and never allow children to play with the charging cable. If the plug provided does not fit the electrical outlet, do not modify the

plug. Arrange for a qualified electrician to inspect the electrical outlet. Do not put fingers into the electric vehicle connector.

### DANGER

There is a risk of electric shock that may cause personal injury or death. Do not use the charging cable if any part of the charging cable is damaged. Do not open or remove the charging cable cover. Service by qualified personnel only. Connect the charging cable to a properly grounded outlet with cables that are not damaged.

### Basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2)



- 1 Vehicle plug
- 2 Status indicators
- 3 Wall plug

Basic domestic cables (mode 2) are used for charging at domestic electrical outlets. A basic domestic cable (mode 2) consists of a vehicle plug, a control box and a plug for the domestic electrical outlet. The control box has an integrated charge controller and several LED indicating the charging status. Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are similar to basic domestic cables (mode 2). However, the charging performance of enhanced domestic cables

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

(mode 2 charging) is better than the charging performance of basic domestic cables (mode 2). Enhanced domestic cables (mode 2) are used at Green'Up sockets which have to be installed by a certified electrician at the customer's site.

### Charging cable status indicators

After plugging in the charging cable, it will perform a quick self test and all status indicators illuminate for a moment. For the functions of the status indicators, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

### Important information about portable electric vehicle charging

- Charging an electric vehicle can stress a building's electrical system more than a typical household appliance.
- Before you plug in to any electrical outlet, have a qualified electrician inspect and verify the electrical system (electrical outlet, wiring, junctions and protection devices) for heavy-duty service at a 10 A continuous load.
- Electrical outlets may wear out with normal usage or be damaged over

time, making them unsuitable for BEV charging.

- Check the electrical outlet / plug while charging and discontinue use if the electrical outlet / plug is hot, then have the electrical outlet serviced by a qualified electrician.
- When outdoors, plug into an electrical outlet that is weatherproof while in use.
- Mount the charging cable to reduce strain on the electrical outlet / plug.

### Mode 3 charging cable



- 1 Vehicle plug
- 2 Plug for wall box / AC charging station

Mode 3 charging cables are used for charging at wall boxes and AC charging stations. A mode 3 charging cable provides a vehicle plug and a plug for the wall box / AC charging station. Wall boxes / AC charging stations may provide an integrated mode 3 charging cable. For more information on the mode 3 charging cable, refer to the manual of the charging cable manufacturer.

### Mode 4 charging cable

#### **i** NOTE

Only use DC charging cables shorter than 30 meters.

Mode 4 charging cables are used for DC charging. Since mode 4 charging cables are integrated within DC charging stations, they only provide a vehicle plug.

### High voltage battery

#### **⚠** WARNING

Damage to the high voltage battery or high voltage system can create a

risk of electric shock, overheating, or fire.

If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by a moderate to severe crash, it must be inspected as soon as possible by qualified personnel. Until the technical inspection has been carried out, the vehicle must be stored outside at a minimum distance of 5 metres from any structure or other flammable objects. If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by flood or fire, it must not be moved at all and has to be inspected by qualified personnel as soon as possible.

To preserve the range and the durability of the high voltage battery, the following is recommended:

- Whenever possible do not charge the high voltage battery more than 80%.
- Do not completely discharge the high voltage battery.
- Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than twelve hours) when the high voltage battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.

- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C and above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- Avoid charging the vehicle at low temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above 30 °C.
- Do not use the high voltage battery as a generator of energy.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the high voltage battery.

### Leakage

Damage to the high voltage battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. The following is recommended:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, that the vehicle is equipped with a high voltage battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the high voltage battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the high voltage battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.

- Too low a coolant level must be topped up and the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

## Charging

### WARNING

Persons with a pacemaker or similar devices should consult a doctor for possible precautions. If in doubt, during charging do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit.

In order to ensure the compatibility of plug and outlet, a label is used. The label is located on the inside of the vehicle's charging port flap. Make sure to connect only a cable of the same type.



Type 2 plug or outlet used for AC charging



FF plug or outlet used for DC charging

**⚠ WARNING**

Avoid any entry of fluids into the charging port of the vehicle, the vehicle plug of the charging cable and the domestic electrical outlet.

When charging at a public AC charging station / public DC charging station, follow the instructions for the use of the respective charging station. Public AC charging stations may not provide an integrated charging cable. In this case, a portable mode 3 charging cable is required.

**⚠ WARNING**

When charging at a domestic electrical outlet, only use an outlet which is properly grounded and protected by a 30 mA differential switch. Only use a domestic electrical outlet protected by a circuit breaker

adapted to the amperage of the electrical circuit.

Have a qualified electrician check the electrical installation to be used.

The installation has to be in compliance with national standards and compatible with the vehicle.

When using a dedicated domestic electrical outlet, have it installed by a qualified electrician.

Make sure that the electrical outlet, the plug and the cable do not support the weight of the control box.

**⚠ WARNING**

The engine does not start if the charging cable is connected to the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the cluster.

During the charging process, unlocking the vehicle will interrupt charging. If no action is taken on tailgate, the doors or the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.

Do not work in the engine compartment. Some areas remain very hot,

even an hour after charging and the fan may start at any time.

**⚠ WARNING**

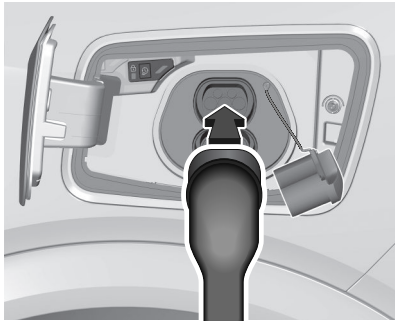
Make sure that the charging port flap is closed. Do not leave the charging cable connected to the domestic electrical outlet.

1. Press P and switch off the vehicle.

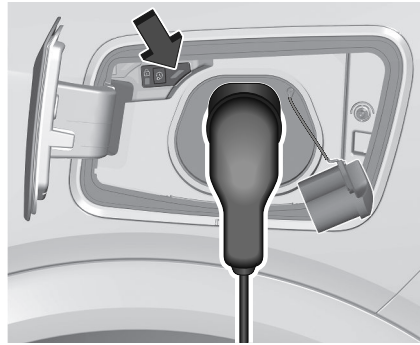


2. Push the charging port flap at the two "features/stripes" on the rear center of the flap.

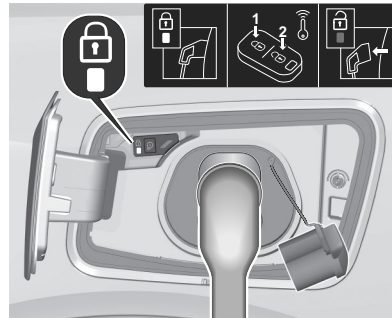
3. If necessary, take the charging cable out of the load compartment.
4. If necessary, plug in the plug of the charging cable into the corresponding port of the external power source.
5. If necessary, remove the protective cover from the vehicle plug of the charging cable.



6. Plug in the vehicle plug of the charging cable into the charging port of the vehicle.



The start of charging is indicated by the green flashing of the status indicator at the charging port and at the control box of the charging cable if available. Charging status 143



Once charging, the vehicle plug will be locked to the charging port and

cannot be disconnected while charging is active. indicator illuminates.

### Canceling the charging process

#### NOTE

At public charging stations, the canceling and subsequent resuming of the charging process may cause additional costs. Once the charging process has started, only the driver's door can be unlocked without canceling the charging process. Therefore, activate the driver's door only function in the vehicle customization.

On DC fast charging stations the canceling is managed through the charging station only. In case of trouble to abort the sharing you must contact the local charging provider.

Press on the remote control to cancel the charging process at any time.

Press twice to cancel the charging process at any time if the function driver's door only is activated in the vehicle customization.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

Central locking system ➡ 9

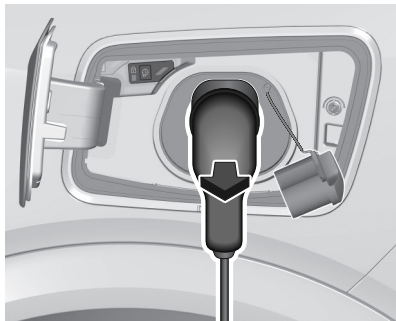
Vehicle customization ➡ 94

### Stop charging

The high voltage battery is fully charged if the status indicator on the charging port permanently illuminates green.

1. Unlock the vehicle before removing the vehicle plug from the charging port.  
If the vehicle is already unlocked, lock the vehicle and unlock it again.

The unlocking is not possible if the vehicle ignition is ON (e.g. driver is waiting in the car and listening to the infotainment while charging).



2. Disconnect the vehicle plug of the charging cable from the charging port within 30 seconds after unlocking.
3. Close the charging port flap by pressing firmly in the center to latch properly.
4. Disconnect the charging cable from the external power source.
5. If necessary, store the charging cable in the load compartment.

While the charging cable is plugged into the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be driven.

### Programmable charging

By default, charging starts as soon as the charging cable is connected to the charging port of the vehicle. It is also possible to schedule charging using the Infotainment screen.

Programmable charging is only possible when charging at a domestic electrical outlet / Green'Up socket or a wall box.


Programmable charging is also available via the MyOpel App.

### NOTE

On vehicles without integrated navigation system, programmable charging can only be used via the MyOpel App.

### Battery Care (BEV)

**This feature is located in the "ENERGY" app, under the "Charging" section.**

Battery Care (for AC charging only) can be turned on or off by tapping the  symbol. When Battery Care is activated, the system will automatically limit the charge to 80%—starting after the first AC charge above 80%.

You can override this limit for the next charging session, even if Battery Care is still active. You can also turn off Battery Care completely. The vehicle will regularly remind you that this may reduce the lifespan of the high-voltage (HV) battery.

### Battery Charging Limit 80%

It is possible to active/deactivate a limitation of the traction battery charging to 80% of its capacity.

80% charging is recommended for daily use. It may improve performance and durability.

Full charging is recommended for a long trip and will take longer.



### NOTE

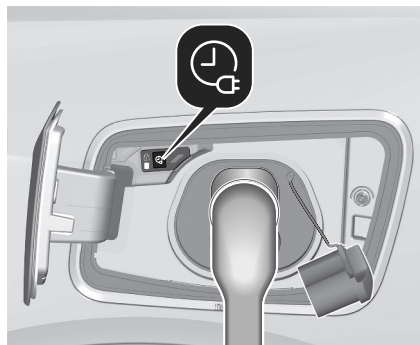
80% charging limit, when activated, is only applied to modes 2 and 3. Deferred charging is only possible with modes 2 and 3.


- After programming the deferred charging, connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.

1. Press 



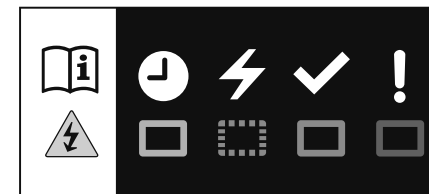
2. Touch 
3. Select Charging
4. Touch 
5. Define the number of hours and minutes after which the charging process starts.
6. Touch **OK**.
7. Plug in the vehicle.



8. Within one minute, press  to activate programmable charging.
9. Depending on version, lock the vehicle.

The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

## Charging status



If the vehicle is plugged in and the ignition is switched off, the charging status indicator indicates the following:

- Illuminates white: welcome lighting when charging port flap is opened
- Illuminates green: charging complete
- Flashes green: charging high voltage battery in process, charging external devices in process
- Illuminates blue: programmable charging active
- Illuminates red: malfunction

A malfunction may be caused by the vehicle or the electrical installation at the customer's site.

Further charging status indicators are located on the control box of the basic domestic cable (mode 2) / enhanced domestic cable (mode 2).

Charging cable ⇨ 136

Programmable charging ⇨ 142

## Battery Preconditioning

This feature allows you to take advantage of a warmed-up battery in cold conditions, thus reducing the additional charging time during the first charge in DC charging speed (Mode 4) in cold weather conditions, improve battery durability and regen performance.

### Battery Pre-conditioning With Cabin

The following conditions allow battery pre-conditioning to start, heating up the battery too before driving, in parallel with cabin:

- The car is plugged (mode 2 or mode 3).
- Deactivate Battery Charging Limit 80% function.  
Battery Charging Limit 80% ⇨ 142
- The cabin preconditioning is activated/scheduled.

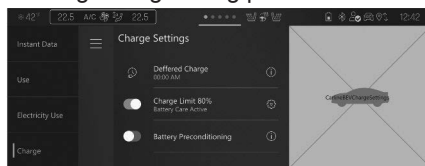
Temperature Preconditioning ⇨ 89

- **Customer benefit: The battery pre-heating function (Step 1) allows customer to leave home with a warmed-up battery, thus reducing the additional charging time during the first charge in mode 4 in cold weather conditions, improve battery durability and regen performance.**

### Operating Conditions

#### Programming

On board the vehicle, simply turn on the car and start to drive. The battery temperature is maintained during thanks to its thermal capacity to allow a good enough temperature for next charging phase. Feature not working during driving phase.



## Automatic Battery Pre-conditioning With Navigation

### Operating Conditions

The battery heating combined is launched whenever a trip is launched, and if there's at least a "STOP" identified by TT during the trip.

This feature will increase the battery temperature up to 30°C in preparation of the fast charge.

When the outside temperature is below 20°C and the actual state of charge is above 10%, pre-heating may occur regardless of Battery Care mode or charge limit settings (Daily/Trip).

### NOTE

This operation takes time to heat the battery, for example 40 minutes when the inside battery temperature is 5°C.

### Programming

Set a destination on the navigation, indicating a DC station in route through EV routing or through simple navigation.

Based on temperature, Navigation info and SOC, the preconditioning is auto-

matically set. Thanks to this battery can heat-up properly to be prepared for charging session. In Charge setting menu and configurable widget is always possible to see Automatic (icon) under the Battery Pre-conditioning toggle. The user can stop it using the toggle available in the widget area (Energy animation) or in the Energy app.



## Manual Battery Pre-conditioning Operating Conditions

This feature will increase the battery temperature up to 30°C in preparation of the fast charge.

### **i** NOTE

This operation takes time to heat the battery, for example 40 minutes when the inside battery temperature is 5°C.

Manual activation can be enabled for a maximum of 2 hours per key-on to key-off sequence.



## Programming

The user can activate it, only if there's no tri planner in progress, and with the same conditions:

State of Charge > 10%

Outside temperature < 20°C

Manual activation can be enabled for a maximum of 2 hours per key-on to key-off sequence.

After 2 hours, the function will be deactivated, but the user can activate it again during the same key on – key off sequence.

Set the Manual Battery Pre-conditioning through the dashboard.

When activated Manual (icon) will appear under battery pre-conditioning toggle.

Based on temperature and propulsion info the battery pre-conditioning heat up the battery preparing the charging session.

In Charge setting menu and configurable widget is always possible to see the indication Manual (icon) under the battery pre-conditioning toggle. This feature can be switched off manually.

Battery pre-heating will raise the battery temperature by approximately 30°C above its initial temperature. When the key is turned OFF, the system logic automatically resets to 'Inactive'.

### **⚠** WARNING

In Mode 2 (domestic socket), reaching 100% charge may not be possible if the charging power is less than 11 kW.

## Vehicle to Load (BEV)

Vehicle to Load (V2L) is a function that allows the use of the traction battery to power or charge external devices as long as the battery is above 30% charge. If the battery reaches 30%, the energy transfer will stop automatically. The adapter plugs into the charging port of the vehicle and offers a standard 230V / 16A plug for connecting the external device.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**⚠ WARNING**

Misuse of the adapter can cause electric shocks or start a fire.

**⚠ WARNING**

The device is waterproof against rainfall, but it is not advisable to connect it in bad weather as it can damage the external device. The V2L adapter does not resist being submerged.

**i NOTE**

Using the device will drain the battery, check that the vehicle is charged sufficiently to reach a charging point.

**i NOTE**

Pay attention to the vehicle and the external device when using V2L so that only the intended persons use the system.

**i NOTE**

For more information, please refer to the manual supplied with the V2L device.

**Activation**

With the vehicle unlocked and ignition ON:

- Plug in the adapter in the socket.
- Press the button on the adapter.
- When the LED on the adapter is illuminated steady green, plug the external device into the adapter

When connected, the infotainment display will open a dedicated Energy Transfer page, and the following LEDs will illuminate:



Flashing green



Steady

**Deactivation**

- Press the button on the adapter to stop powering the external device
- Unplug the external device
- Unplug the adapter and close the charging port.

**Vehicle Loading****Roof bars****⚠ WARNING**

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to

use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle. Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

### **⚠ WARNING**

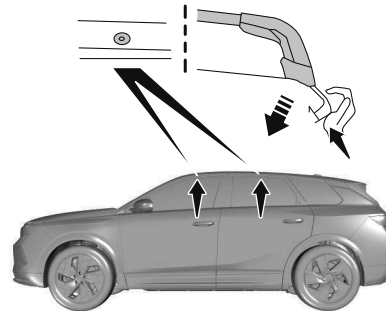
Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **80 kg**.

As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

### **Direct fitting on roof**



The transverse bars must only be fixed at the four anchorage points located on the roof frame.

These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.

The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each anchorage point.

Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof. Secure the load firmly. Regularly check the security and

tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.

### **Load reduction mode**

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery. When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

### **Trailer Towing**

#### **Towing Device**

#### **General information**

### **⚠ CAUTION**

For new vehicles, only tow a trailer after having driven at least 1000 km.

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle. Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye.

If this is the case, use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle to have it on hand if needed.

### Trailer loads

#### CAUTION

##### BEV:

Use of towing equipment is permissible for attaching compatible bicycle carriers only.

Do not use towing equipment for trailer towing.


The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded.

The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In

general, they are valid for inclines up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 m of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate  238.

### Vertical coupling load

#### WARNING

If attaching accessories to the trailer hitch such as bicycle carriers, tow boxes etc., do comply with the maximum permissible vertical coupling load.

When using a bicycle carrier, do not transport more than four conventional bicycles or two electric bicycles.

Make sure to place the heaviest

bicycle as close as possible to the vehicle.

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load 80 kg is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents.

Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

### Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

## Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabilizer, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. A maximum speed of 100 km/h is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended. If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.

## Towing equipment

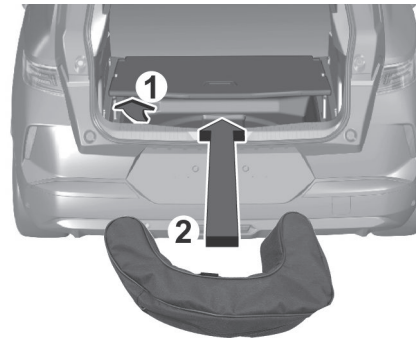
### ⚠ CAUTION

When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

### ⚠ WARNING

It is not allowed to drive without a trailer and the coupling ball bar installed as it is hiding the fog lamp in the center of the rear fascia.

### Stowage of the coupling ball bar with double load floor

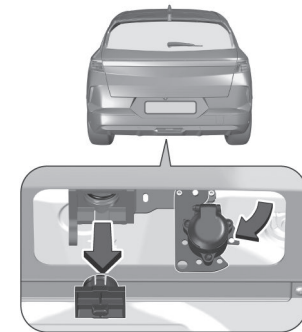


Lift the double load floor and stow the bag with the coupling ball bar un-

derneath and with the velcro stripe downwards to ensure a proper fixation of the bag.

### Fitting the coupling ball bar

Stowage of the coupling ball bar with double load floor Lift the double load floor and stow the bag with the coupling ball bar underneath.



Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

1

2

3

4

5

6

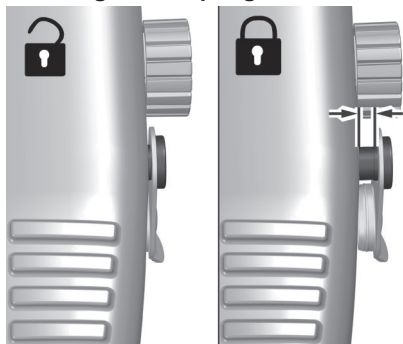
7

8

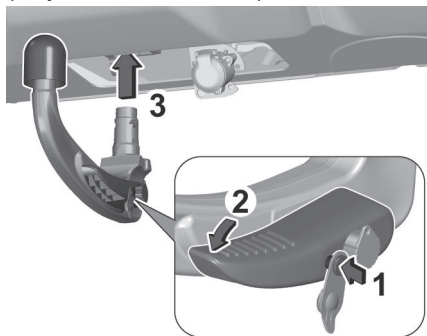
9

10

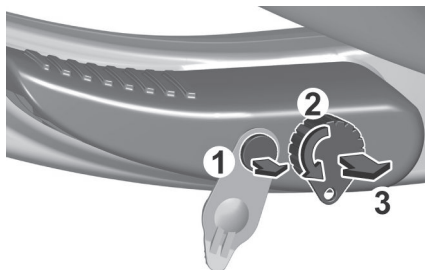
### Inserting the coupling ball bar



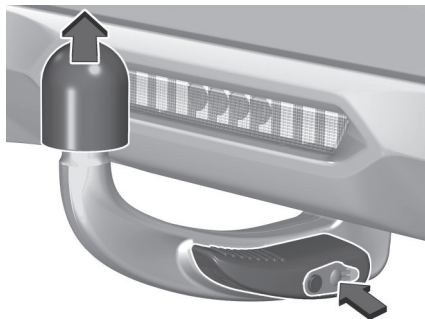
Make sure the mechanism is unlocked (only red mark is visible).



Insert the coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages. The handle should snap upwards.



Close the lock using the key by turning it anti-clockwise and pulling it.



Clip the cap onto the lock. Remove the protective cover from the towball.

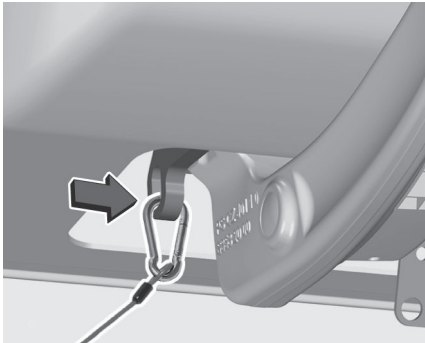
### Checking the correct installation of the coupling ball bar

- The mechanism must be locked (green mark is fully visible).
- The lock must be closed.
- The key must be removed. The key can only be removed when the lock is closed.
- The cap must be clipped onto the lock
- The protective cover must be removed

#### **WARNING**

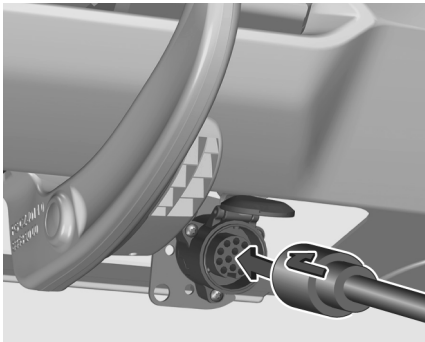
Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Eye for break-away stopping cable



Attach the breakaway stopping cable to eye.

### Connecting the power socket



Pull down the electrical power socket located on the trailer hitch.

Open the protective cover for the plug. Insert the plug and perform a clockwise quarter turn to lock it in place.

### Dismounting the coupling ball bar

- Grasp the power plug, perform an anticlockwise quarter turn and pull it out of the socket.
- Push the electrical socket upwards in its parking position.
- Detach the breakaway stopping cable from the safety eye.
- Unclip the cap from the lock.
- Insert the key and open the lock by turning clockwise.
- Hold the towball with one hand and push on the lever to release it.
- Replace the protective cover on the towball and the sealing plug in the opening on the carrier.
- Replace the towball in its bag to protect it and stow it.

### Trailer stability assist

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle / trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible. The

system operates from 60 km/h to 160 km/h.

#### **WARNING**

In some situations, the system may not detect trailer snaking, e.g. when towing a light trailer. On slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

### Towing Recommendation

#### **CAUTION**

For Hybrid (MHEV) models in high altitude conditions (>2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

# ADVANCED DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

## General Information

### WARNING

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention. The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle. When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

### NOTE

To comply with the European general safety regulations, some driver assistance systems can only be deactivated on the Infotainment screen until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

## BEV

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention.

### NOTE

Driving and maneuvering aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their maneuvers before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.

These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

### NOTE

**Driving aids.** You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

### NOTE

**Maneuvering aids.** The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole maneuver, in particular using the mirrors.

### Information displayed Legal Obligations

In order to comply with European regulations and for safety reasons, these

functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert
- Lane keeping assist
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera
- Parking sensors

**⚠ WARNING**

The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.  
If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).  
Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other

objects; they may hamper correct operation of the associated system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving aids camera**

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.  
In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.  
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.  
In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

**i NOTE**

**Other cameras.** The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.  
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Sensors**

The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

When reverse gear is engaged, an audio signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted. The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences). Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre. Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

**i NOTE**

**Maintenance.** Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.

When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Mats/Pedal trims**

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

**i NOTE**

**Units of speed**


Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in. If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorized locally. In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Speed Control Assistance System

### Speed Limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle from exceeding a preset maximum speed. The maximum speed can be set at speeds between 30 km/h and 180 km/h. The driver can accelerate the vehicle up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill. The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly. The status and preset speed limit are displayed on the cluster.


### Switching on the system

Press  once to activate the Cruise Control function. Press Limit twice to activate speed limiter.

## Activation of the functionality

### Setting speed by the driver




Press  once to activate the Cruise Control function.



The preset speed can be changed by pressing + to increase or - to decrease the speed. A short press changes

speed by 1 km/h, a long press changes speed by 5 km/h.

Press + or - to activate.


Press  to activate within the same ignition cycle.

### Exceeding the speed limit

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly to the final point. In this case, the preset speed value flashes.


Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

### Deactivation of the functionality


Press , speed limiter is in pause mode and a message is displayed. The vehicle is driven without speed limiter.

Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

### Resume limit speed

Press , the stored speed limit will be obtained.

## Switching off the system

Press , the speed limiter mode is deselected and the speed limit indication extinguishes.

### Fault

In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have the system checked by a workshop.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The adaptive cruise control can store and maintain speeds above 40 km/h. In addition, it maintains a certain following distance to the vehicle ahead. For vehicles with manual transmission, any gear has to be selected. For vehicles with automatic transmission, position **D** or the second or a higher gear in position **M** must be selected. Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill. The system maintains the vehicle speed at the preset speed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.

The status and preset speed is displayed on the cluster.

Do not use the adaptive cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.



The adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It uses a camera located at the top of the windshield and a radar unit located in the front bumper to detect the vehicles ahead. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle ahead, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights. If the vehicle ahead accelerates or changes lane, the adaptive cruise control progressively accelerates the vehicle to return to the stored set

speed. If the driver operates the turn lights to overtake a slower vehicle, the adaptive cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle ahead to help passing it. However, the set speed will never be exceeded.

If the vehicle ahead is moving too slowly and the selected following distance cannot be maintained anymore, a warning chime is given and a message is displayed. The message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle. The system can brake the vehicle until a full stop. Depending on version, the system can automatically accelerate the vehicle after a full stop.

**⚠ WARNING**

The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by active emergency braking. If the brake lights fail, the system does not operate.

**Switching on the system**

Press and make sure the **Drive Assist** is activated in the Infotainment screen.



Press successively until the adaptive cruise control mode is selected. The adaptive cruise control screen is displayed. The system is still not activated.

**Operation conditions**

The system can be activated if the following conditions are met:

- Activation is possible at a vehicle speed of above 30 km/h but the system works down to 0 km/h
- driver's door closed

- driver's seat belt fastened
- D selected or second or higher gear engaged
- parking brake released
- brake pedal depressed if vehicle stationary.

### Activation of the functionality

If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.

Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed and activate the cruise control. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and a road element are displayed in green. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Alternatively, press the + or - buttons to increase or decrease the speed and store this speed. The cruise control is immediately activated if the either button is pressed. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and the road element are displayed in green.

### Setting speed by the driver



The set speed can be changed by using the buttons to + to increase or - to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

### Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new value for the adaptive cruise control.

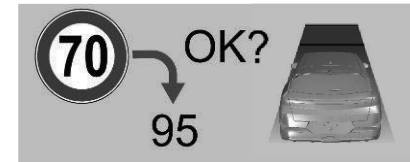
### When passing the speed limit sign **OK?** is automatically displayed.

Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

### After passing the speed limit sign

Press **OK** on the steering wheel.



**OK?** is displayed

Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Traffic sign assistant ⇨ 189

### Exceeding the set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed. If a slower moving vehicle is ahead, the following distance selected by the driver is restored. While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed flashes on the adaptive cruise control screen.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

**⚠ WARNING**

Accelerating by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the cluster.

**Resuming stored speed**

Press **|| ▷** or **OK** to reactivate the adaptive cruise control at the stored speed.

**Adaptive cruise control on vehicles with automatic transmission**

The adaptive cruise control allows to maintain the selected distance behind a braking vehicle until a complete stop is reached.

If the system has stopped your vehicle behind another vehicle, the green control indicator (Ⓟ) is displayed to the left of the set speed setting. This symbol notifies, that the vehicle is hold automatically in stop position. While the vehicle is hold in stop position, the following recommendations should be followed:

- Do not leave the vehicle.

- Do not open the load compartment.
- Do not engage the reverse gear.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.

Within three seconds after the vehicle has been stopped by the system, the vehicle slowly moves again. After three seconds, accelerate or depress (Ⓟ) to drive away. Pay attention to the surroundings of the vehicle when driving away.

If the vehicle stays stopped for more than five minutes without any action of the driver, the electric parking brake is applied. Control indicator (Ⓟ) will illuminate. To release electric parking brake, press the accelerator pedal.

Electric parking brake  123

**⚠ WARNING**

When the system is deactivated or canceled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Be always prepared to manually apply the brake to hold the vehicle stationary. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by adaptive cruise control.

Always engage **P** and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

**Setting the following distance**

When the adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to close (1 bar), normal (2 bars) or far (3 bars).

If the engine is running and the adaptive cruise control is switched on (gray) or active (green), you can modify the following distance setting:



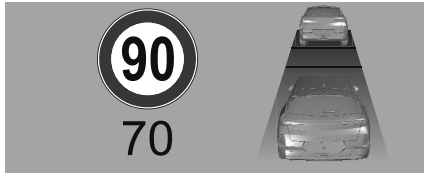
Press the button to display the current following distance setting in the cluster.

Press the button successively to select the required following distance setting. The selected following distance is indicated by full bars on the adaptive cruise control screen.

**⚠ WARNING**

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions. Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

**Detecting the vehicle ahead**



If the system detects a vehicle in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control screen changes accordingly.

**Deactivation of the functionality**

Press **|| ▷**.

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated, but not disabled. The last stored set speed remains in memory for later usage.

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- brake pedal depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, N selected
- electric parking brake engaged
- seat belt unfastened
- driver's door opened

**Switching off the system**

Press ASSIST successively until the desired mode to switch off assistance is selected.

**Driver's attention**

- Use the adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.
- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tire traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control of the vehicle.

- Do not use the adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.
- Do not use the system when the spare wheel is in use.

**System limitations**

**⚠ WARNING**

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- The adaptive cruise control only considers traffic driving in the same direction.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians, cyclists and animals for braking and driving off.

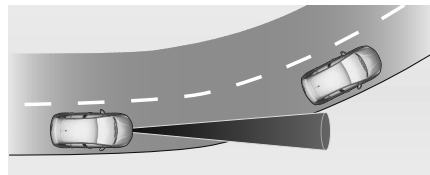


- The adaptive cruise control does not consider stationary vehicles

As the radar's field of detection is quite narrow, it is possible that the system may not detect:

- vehicles of reduced width, e.g. motorcycles, scooters
- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane
- vehicles entering a corner
- vehicles suddenly pulling out

Deactivate the system in the following situations:



- when driving in a tight bend
- when approaching a roundabout
- when following a vehicle not detected by system, e.g., a motorcycle
- when the vehicle ahead sharply decelerates
- when a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead

### Hill considerations



#### **WARNING**

Do not use the adaptive cruise control on steep hill roads.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed. When going downhill you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed. Note that applying the brake deactivates the system.

### Radar unit



The radar unit is located in the middle of the front bumper.

#### **WARNING**

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, in the event of a frontend impact, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind may be affected and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a workshop to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

**⚠ WARNING**

The usage of a license plate support on the front bumper may affect the proper radar unit functionality. When using a license plate support, follow the markings and indications on the front bumper.

**Fault**

In the event of an adaptive cruise control fault, a warning light is illuminated in the cluster and a warning message is displayed in the cluster accompanied by an audible signal. The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals. Have the system checked by a workshop. As a safety measure, do not use the system if the brake lights are faulty. Do not use the system if the front bumper is damaged.

**Collision Avoidance Assistance System****⚠ WARNING**

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention. The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle. When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

**⚠ WARNING**


The usage of a license plate support on the front bumper may affect the proper radar unit functionality. When using a license plate support, follow the markings and indications on the front bumper.

**i NOTE**

To comply with the European general safety regulations, some driver assistance systems can only be deactivated on the Infotainment

Display until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

**Active Emergency Braking (AEB)**

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists directly ahead, when the driver does not actively take action either by manual braking or by steering. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver will be warned by the forward collision alert  166. The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, radar sensor) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

1

2

3

4

5

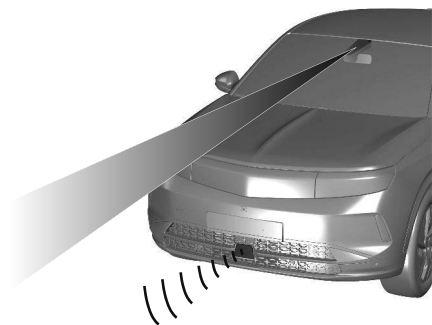
6

7

8

9

10



**⚠ WARNING**

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. It warns the driver if the vehicle is at risk of a collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist. Just before the imminent collision, it reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity. The system may also react on animals. However, animals smaller than 0.5 m or objects on the road may not be detected.

After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions. The driver can override the automatic emergency braking by turning strongly the steering wheel and / or by pressing firmly the gas pedal. To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no food or mats in the area of the pedals.

**Activation or Deactivation**

Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it was deactivated during the last ignition cycle. For further information ➡ 152. The system can be activated or deactivated on the Infotainment screen via the vehicle settings 🚗. Information Display ➡ 95. Depending on version, deactivation is only possible at a standstill. If deactivated, (⊖) illuminates and a message is shown on the cluster.

**Functionality**

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the detected objects, there are several operational speed ranges. Active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h when a pedestrian or a cyclist has been detected. On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h when a stationary vehicle or a motorcyclist has been detected. On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates from 8 km/h to 140 km/h when a moving vehicle has been detected. Active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h when a pedestrian or a cyclist has been detected. On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates up to 80 km/h when a stationary vehicle or a motorcyclist has been detected. On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera, the active emergency braking operates from 8 km/h to 140 km/h when a moving vehicle has been detected.

The system includes the following functions:

- forward collision warning
- emergency brake assist
- automatic braking Forward collision warning

Forward collision warning ⇨ 166

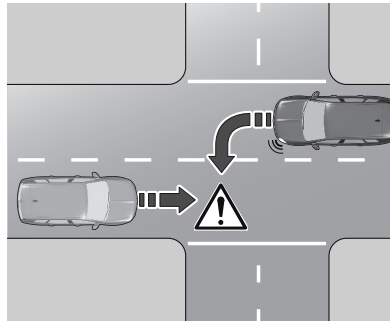
### Turning maneuver

The system may also operate during a turning maneuver when detecting another vehicle, a motorcyclist or a pedestrian.

### Crossing the road with another vehicle

On vehicles equipped with radar sensor and front camera: The system may operate when the vehicle is turning and detects another vehicle on the adjacent lane, approaching from the opposite

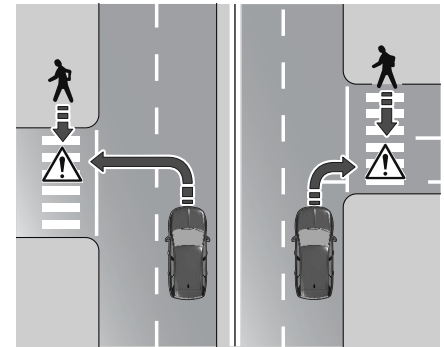
direction, if the following conditions are met:



- the corresponding turn light is activated
- the vehicle is about to cross the driving path of another vehicle
- the vehicle speed is between 8 km/h and 25 km/h
- a collision with another vehicle is probable In addition, the system also reacts on motorcyclists.

### Crossing road with a pedestrian

The system may operate when the vehicle is turning left or right and detects a crossing pedestrian, if the following conditions are met:



- the pedestrian is crossing in front of the vehicle
- the pedestrian can clearly be detected by the sensors
- the scenery is detectable by the sensors, e.g. brightness, contrast versus background
- the vehicle speed is between 8 km/h and 25 km/h

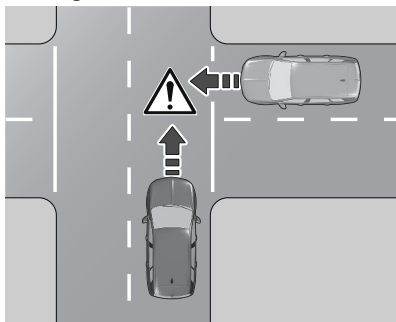
In addition, the system also reacts on cyclists.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

## Crossing maneuver

### Vehicle crossing the path

The system may operate when a visible vehicle is crossing your path, if the following conditions are met:



- the visible vehicle is crossing your path and can clearly be detected by the sensors
- the speed of the crossing vehicle is below 65 km/h
- the vehicle's speed is below 65 km/h

### Automatic braking

Just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash.

If active emergency braking is applied, (⊖) flashes on the cluster.

If active emergency braking is finished, (⊖) flashes for a few seconds.

**During this time, active emergency braking cannot be applied if there is a risk of a further collision.**

Below a speed of 50 km/h, emergency automatic braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop. If the speed exceeds this limit, automatic braking reduces the speed. However, the driver must apply the brake to come to a complete stop.

If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for a certain time. **Keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.**

Cruise control will be deactivated when an automatic braking occurs. In some cases, the driver may wish to override the automatic braking provided by the active emergency braking system.

Firmly apply the accelerator pedal or firmly turn the steering wheel to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

## ⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Active emergency braking will not brake automatically outside of its operating speed range.

### Emergency brake assist

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking. This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal. Emergency brake assist will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released.

### Operation conditions

Active emergency braking only works when:

- the brake system is operational
- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control are activated
- the seat belts of the front seats and depending on version of the rear seats are fastened
- constant speed on unwinding roads

Active emergency braking is automatically deactivated in the following cases:

- a spare wheel with smaller diameter is detected
- a fault with the brake pedal switch or with the left or right brake light is detected
- a fault in the active emergency braking system, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected
- a severe crash, e.g., with airbag deployment was detected

### System Limitations

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- windshield damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- damaged or deformed front bumper or front bumper covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- front camera out of its regular position

- automatic braking not available, e.g. brake discs cooling going on
- brake pedal continuously used for a long time, e.g. on a long downhill road
- winding or hilly roads
- system initialization process after battery disconnection
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle ahead creating road spray

After an impact or when damages are visible have the vehicle checked by a workshop.

The system performance may be affected by:

- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control in progress
- vehicle battery voltage out of range
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer
- banked roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- vehicle overloaded

The driver must not overload neither the load compartment nor the roof of the vehicle.

If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the camera sensors have to be cleaned.

If the system is temporarily affected and no driver action is required, no message is displayed.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and be ready to take action to avoid crashes.


We recommend to deactivate the system in the vehicle personalization in the following cases:


- when towing a trailer or caravan
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack
- when the vehicle is being towed
- when performing any maintenance with ignition on
- when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains
- when a spare wheel is fitted that is smaller than the other wheels
- before using an automatic car wash
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop
- if the windshield has been damaged close to the camera



1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10


- If the front bumper has been damaged or deformed
- If the radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact on the front bumper
- if the brake lights are not working




### Fault

If the system does not work properly or is not available, e.g. during the initialisation,  illuminates on the cluster.

If the system has a fault,  illuminates on the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the sensors or the camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if these needs to be cleaned. If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a workshop.

 may also illuminate if the infotainment system has an issue.

If  and  illuminate on the cluster after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, consult a workshop. Vehicle messages  85

## Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

The forward collision warning alerts the driver if there is a risk of collision with the vehicle ahead, with a cyclist or a pedestrian.

### WARNING

Forward collision warning is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, there may not be enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

### Activation

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the detected objects, there are several operational speed ranges. Forward collision warning operates up to 80 km/h when a pedestrian or a

cyclist has been detected. Forward collision warning operates from 8 km/h up to vehicle maximum speed when a vehicle has been detected.

### Alerting the driver

The driver is warned by following alerts:

- Level 1: A warning message is displayed on the cluster, when the distance to the vehicle ahead gets too small.
- Level 2: A warning message is displayed on the cluster and a warning chime sounds, when a collision is imminent and immediate driver's action is required.
- Level 3: Depending on version, the vehicle may produce a short brake jerk to confirm the risk of collision. The immediate driver's action is required.

### WARNING

When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, a level 2 alert may be displayed without a level 1 alert before.

Level 1 alerts depend on the alert sensitivity set. This alert type is

only displayed in case of moving vehicles. At lower speed it is disabled.

**⚠ WARNING**

The colour lighting of this symbol does not correspond to local traffic laws on following distance. The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions etc. at all times.

**Selecting the alert sensitivity**

**i NOTE**

If the alert sensitivity setting with the longest distance is set, the system warns earlier. This increases the safety, but increases the amount of alerts if the legal safety distance is not kept. To reduce the number of alerts, select a shorter alert sensitivity setting.

Three alert sensitivities can be selected in the driver assistance systems menu. Vehicle customization ➡ 94

The chosen setting will be memorized when the ignition has been switched off. The alert sensitivity will vary based on selected alert setting.

**Deactivation**

The system can only be deactivated by deactivating the active emergency braking in the vehicle settings 🗨 on the Infotainment screen. Touch screen and Infotainment screen ➡ 95

**System limitations**

Forward collision warning is designed to warn on vehicles, cyclists and pedestrians, but may react also to other objects.

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- driving on winding or hilly roads
- driving during nighttime
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windshield is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt etc.

- the windshield is damaged or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers

**Post Collision Braking System (PCBS)**

If an accident is detected, the vehicle requests automatic post collision braking. The goal of this function is to reduce the risk of further collisions if the driver does not react. The system operates on frontal, lateral and rear collision. The automatic post collision braking is not operational if the capability of the vehicle to trigger and execute the automatic post collision braking is unavailable, as it can occur during destructive accidents or in other specific accident scenarios.

It is possible to override the automatic braking by pressing the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

**System limitations**

The system operates if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- airbags or seat belt pretensioners have been deployed by the collision

1

2

3

4

5

6

7




8

9

10

- braking system and electric functions remain continuously operational during and after collision
- driver has not depressed brake pedal or accelerator pedal

### Fault


If automatic post collision braking is not available, the control indicator  or  illuminates continuously together with , a corresponding message appears in the cluster and a warning chime sounds. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Vehicle stability assistance system


### Anti-Slip Regulator (ASR)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimizes traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability. If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic

stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics. These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

 These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp flashing on the instrument panel).

### Fault

 In the event of a fault, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### WARNING

#### ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed. It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep

these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tires and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers.

In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tires is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tires approved for your vehicle.

All tire specifications are listed on the tire/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip. As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output


is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.


ESC operates in combination with the traction control system. It prevents the driven wheels from spinning.

The traction control system is a component of the ESC.

The traction control system improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip, by preventing the driven wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driven wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.


ESC and traction control system are operational after each engine start as soon as  extinguishes.


When ESC and traction control system operate,  flashes.

After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.

 **WARNING**


Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.  
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator  78


ESC and traction control system can be deactivated in the vehicle customization in the Infotainment screen, accessing the menu with .

A status message appears in the cluster when ESC and traction control system are deactivated.

ESC and traction control system can be reactivated in the vehicle customization on the cluster, by applying the brake or in the case that the vehicle is driven faster than 50 km/h.

 in the cluster extinguishes when ESC and traction control system are reactivated. ESC and traction control system are also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Fault**

If there is a fault in the system,  illuminates continuously and a message

appears in the cluster. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Braking Performance Assistance System

### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.



Control indicator 169.

**Fault**

**⚠ WARNING**

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Lane Assistance System

### Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

**⚠ WARNING**

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage

the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle crosses a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver. Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.

No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal or heavy steering.

When the system recognizes an unintended lane departure, the control indicator rapidly flashes yellow.

### Operating conditions

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h
- the turn lights are not activated
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections

Deactivate the system when the vehicle is being towed.

**⚠ WARNING**



This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

### Activation


Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it

was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.

For further information see → 152

If the system is activated,  on the cluster is not illuminated. The system can be activated in the vehicle customization in the Infotainment screen, accessing the menu with .

### Deactivation

The system can be deactivated in the vehicle customization in the Infotainment screen, accessing the menu with via the vehicle settings .


### System limitations


The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens

- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

### Fault

In the event of a fault,  illuminates in the cluster, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

If a sensor is covered,  illuminates in the cluster and a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

#### NOTE

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

### Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

#### WARNING

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage


the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Lane keeping assist supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving.

If the vehicle approaches a road edge or a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned so that the vehicle turns back into the lane.

The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel. Turn the steering wheel in same direction, if the system does not steer sufficiently. Turn the steering wheel gently into opposite direction, if a lane change is intended.

When the system steers to correct the trajectory of the vehicle,  flashes yellow on the cluster. Lane keeping assist does not continuously steer the vehicle.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after the turn lights have been switched off.

The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than ten seconds. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time.

A lane departure warning on the cluster alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver action is required.

**i NOTE**

The system might be inactive if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h
- the turn lights are not activated
- the electronic stability control is activated and not in operation

- no plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- no temporary spare wheel is used
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections

Depending on version, only lane departure warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel is used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g. a trailer is attached.

Deactivate the system when the vehicle is being towed.



**Unavailability After Battery Disconnection:** Lane Keeping Assist can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

**Activation**


Depending on version, the system is automatically active by default every time the engine is started, even if it

was deactivated during the last ignition cycle.

For further information see:  152

If the system is activated,  on the cluster is not illuminated. The system can be activated in the vehicle customization in the Infotainment screen, accessing the menu with .


**Deactivation**


The system can be deactivated in the vehicle customization in the Infotainment screen, accessing the menu with .


The state of the system is memorized when switching off the ignition.

**Hand-off**

When hands-off driving is detected during a correction within a rolling interval of 180 seconds, the system intervenes:

Intervention 1:  flashes until the end of the intervention.

Intervention 2:  flashes and a warning chime sounds until the end of intervention but for at least one second.

Further interventions:  flashes continuously and the warning chime

sounds 10 seconds longer than the previous chime.

A lane departure warning on the cluster alerts when the system cannot hold the vehicle within the lane and immediate driver action is required.

**System limitations**

**i NOTE**


The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.



The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- heavy or unequally distributed loading
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens

- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- wrong tire pressure
- roads with poor lane markings

**Fault**

In the event of a fault,  illuminate on the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the front camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs to be cleaned. If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a workshop.

**i NOTE**

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.

**Lane Positioning Assist (LPA)**

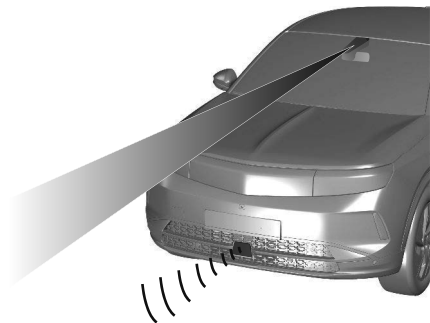
**⚠ WARNING**

The system assists the driver in managing the steering, acceleration and braking within the limits of the laws of physics and the capabilities of the vehicle.

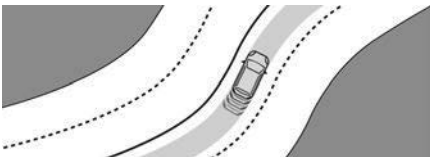
Some road infrastructure elements or vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, which may lead to an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of the acceleration or braking.

Lane positioning assist is an enhancement of the lane keep assist system.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10



The activated system observes the lane markings by using the camera located at the top of the windshield. It steers the vehicle inside the detected lane. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.




Thus, the current position of the vehicle within the lane is kept.

This position is not necessarily the center of the lane.


In the case that the vehicle is driving at the outer edge of the lane, the system corrects the trajectory smoothly towards the center of the currently


driven lane when a determined speed has been exceeded.

Again, the driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel. When the vehicle is steered by the system,  illuminates green in the cluster. However, the control of the vehicle can be taken over at any time by the driver.

Therefore, the driver needs to apply some additional force when turning the steering wheel.

If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts.

If the interruption takes too long, the system will be deactivated.  extinguishes in the cluster.

The system has to be reactivated again by the driver. Lane positioning assist operates only in combination with adaptive cruise control.  155

### Required preconditions



- Drive assist must be activated.
- The driver must hold the steering wheel.
- The turn lights are not activated.
- The Electronic Stability Control is activated and not in operation.

- No plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.
- No dynamic driving is detected, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system.
- No temporary spare wheel is used.
- The vehicle is not driven in a tight corner.
- No system fault is present which prevents corrections.


### Activation/Deactivation



**Activation**

Press  successively until the Drive Assist mode is selected. The Drive Assist screen is displayed on the cluster. Infotainment screen  95

**Deactivation**

Press  successively until the mode to switch off assistance is selected.

**Pausing / suspending the system**

**i NOTE**

When using semi-automated lane change, setting the turn lights starts a semi-automated lane change maneuver.

Advanced lane keep assist may be paused or suspended in the following situations:

- The Electronic Stability Control is in operation or it has been deactivated.
- At least one of the lane markings is not detected by the system for several seconds. The system will be reactivated once the operating conditions are regained.

- The driver activates the turn lights and turns the steering wheel.
- Driving outside the lane limits.
- The steering wheel is held too tight or moved too dynamically.
- The brake pedal or the accelerator pedal is applied.
- The adaptive cruise control is paused.
- The road is too narrow or wide.
- The lateral acceleration in curves is too high

**System limitations**

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow

- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

A warning message may appear when the vehicle is traveling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.

Deactivate the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.



**⚠ WARNING**

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur. The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected. The steering of the system may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure. The system may not detect handsoff driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving. Using

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

the system on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off

### Fault

In the event of a fault,  and  illuminate on the cluster or the HUD, accompanied by a message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Semi-automatic lane changing

### (with Intellidrive 2.0)

This system assists the driver in changing lanes.

To do this, it uses the camera located at the top of the windshield, the radar located at the front and the four angle radars fitted in the bumpers.

### WARNING

The steering wheel is equipped with a hands-on detection system to avoid distraction on the part of the driver.

For more information on the **Hands-on detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

### WARNING

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver remains responsible for their driving by monitoring their surroundings and keeping their hands on the steering wheel. The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation. Any intervention on the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal that causes the adaptive cruise control to be paused or suspended will also cause the system to deactivate.

### Selecting the system

Two options:

- Either when the vehicle is already driving on an eligible road, the driver

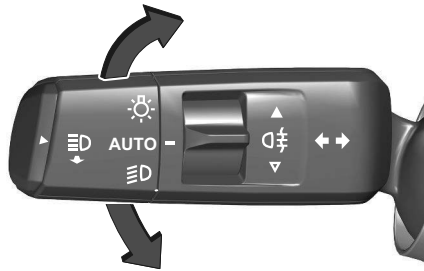
selects the system by activating the Drive Assist Plus 2.0 system.

- Or when the driver is already using Drive Assist Plus, the vehicle suggests selecting the system upon arriving at an eligible road by pressing the **OK** button.

### Operating conditions

- Eligible roads: roads with separate carriageways with prohibited access for pedestrians and cyclists.
- The line separating the lanes must be clear enough to be identified by the system.
- The position and speed of other vehicles must enable the system to safely change lanes.
- Drive Assist Plus 2.0 activated.
- Lane positioning assist activated.
- Vehicle speed between 65 and 180 km/h.

## Activation/Deactivation



1. Activate the direction indicator on the side corresponding to the lane change, whether or not passing the resistance point of the lighting control stalk.
2. (Depending on version) "Ok ?" appears on the cluster. Press **OK** on the steering wheel to confirm the maneuver.
3. The driver can regain control of the vehicle at any time:
4. by deactivating the direction indicator if the vehicle has not yet crossed the line.
5. by firmly holding the steering wheel.
6. by acting on the pedals.

For more information on the **Direction indicators**, refer to the corresponding section.

The message **"Stay attentive"** is displayed as a reminder that the driver is still responsible for the maneuver.



The system then proceeds with the vehicle's lane change.

Once the maneuver has been carried out, the system is automatically deactivated and the lane positioning assist takes over.

If the direction indicator has been set beyond the point of resistance, the driver must pull it back.

### **i** NOTE

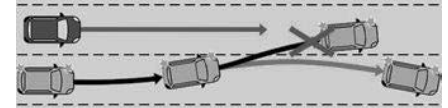
The driver must hold the steering wheel correctly.

As soon as the semi-automatic lane change begins, the system directs the vehicle to the target lane by small actions on the steering to position it in the destination lane.

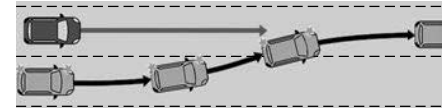
You can feel the steering wheel moving.

## Interrupting the lane change

It is possible that while changing lane, the necessary conditions for the operation of the system may no longer be met.



If this occurs before one of the wheels has crossed the line separating the two lanes, the system automatically returns the vehicle to its original lane (confirmed by the display of a maneuver cancellation message on the instrument panel or in the HUD and an audible signal). The system is then automatically deactivated.



If this occurs when the lane change has started, the system prompts the driver to immediately retake control of the vehicle (confirmed by the display of a message on the instrument panel or

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

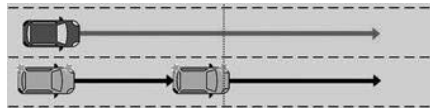
9

10

in the HUD and an audible signal), and the system is automatically deactivated.

### Refused lane change request

When operating the direction indicator, if the necessary conditions are not met, the lines appear in orange on the instrument panel or in the HUD.



The system keeps the vehicle in the original lane. The system is deactivated and the semi-automatic lane change is not carried out.

## Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System

### Automatic Park Assist

#### General information

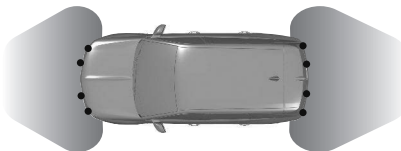
The rear system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre. Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

### Front-rear parking assist

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication.



The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper.

#### Activation

(Depending on country)  
The system can be activated in the vehicle customization in the Infotainment screen, accessing the menu with



When a forward gear has been engaged, the front parking assist is activated, as soon as an obstacle is detected in the front and the speed of the vehicle is below 10 km/h. When the reverse gear has been engaged, the rear parking assist and the front parking assist are activated. After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

#### Deactivation

(Depending on country)  
The system can be deactivated in the vehicle customization in the Infotainment screen, accessing the menu with



The rear parking assist is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

#### Indication

As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and  $P^3$  ⚠ may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that

obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Audible signals are given via front or rear loudspeakers depending on which detected obstacle is nearest to the vehicle.


No audible signals are given:

- if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds and if the obstacle is not in the red (closest) zone
- if the automatic transmission is in P position
- if no further obstacles are detected


**i NOTE**

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Infotainment screen has been switched off.

Additionally, the distance to obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the central screen ➡ 95



When the obstacle is very close,  for danger is displayed.

**Muting the sound / closing the display indication**

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the P)  flashes.

When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

**System limitations**

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors,  and P)  illuminate on the cluster. A message is displayed and a warning chime sounds.


**i NOTE**

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted, vertically and horizontally centered and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist will be reduced if the license plate is bent or a license plate support is used.



** WARNING**

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles. Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

** CAUTION**

In the case of a severe failure of the vehicle with the need to stop the vehicle, the system is deactivated. In the case of a gearbox failure, the parking assist system is not active, when reverse gear is engaged. In the case of a loudspeaker failure, the audible signals may not be given. Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow. If a sensor is covered P) , illuminates and a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

Performance of the parking assist system may be limited or the functionality may not be available at all if  and  illuminate or if the image shown on the Info Display is frozen or if the screen is black.

 **CAUTION**

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading. Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. offroad vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed. Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system. Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle. During a reverse parking manoeuvre, the system does not consider a mounted coupling ball

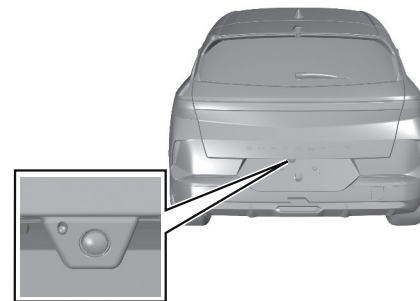
bar. The driver has to consider this additional length.

 **NOTE**

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignment (sporadic false warnings may occur). Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist may be reduced if the license plate is bent or a license plate support is used. Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

## Surround Vision

### Rear View Camera (RVC)



The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. It allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a nearly 180° picture in the Infotainment screen, like a bird's eye view.

 **WARNING**

The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the parking assist sensors, e.g. below

the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed. Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear view camera. Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

The system uses:

- rear view camera, mounted above the rear number plate
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper

The screen in the Infotainment screen is divided into three parts:

- On the right side, there is a view from above the vehicle.
- The middle part consists of a contextual view.
- The left side consists of the view selection as well as the settings menu.

The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.

The area displayed by the rear view camera is limited. Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear.

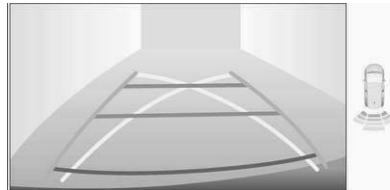
The system automatically selects the best view to display according to the information from the parking sensors. The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

### Activation

The rear view camera is activated when the reverse gear is engaged.

It can also be activated manually in the Driver Assist menu.

### Functionality



Different views can be selected in the left part of the display.

Change the type of view at any time during a maneuver by selecting the required view from the view selection in the left part of the Infotainment screen:

- Standard view
- 180° view

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected. Using the camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during low speed maneuvers. An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time (on the side of the screen), as the vehicle progresses.

This view makes it easier to align the vehicle when parking and to perceive nearby obstacles. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

### Standard view

The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the steering angle.

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper.

The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.

This view is displayed automatically or can be chosen from the view selection. Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

### 180° view

The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.


This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete maneuver.

### Zoom view

The rear view camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the maneuver in order to reconstruct a view from above the rear or the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings.

An image from above the vehicle in its close surroundings is created as the vehicle progresses. Thus, the vehicle can be maneuvered around obstacles nearby. Zoom view cannot be manually selected. It is automatically activated if the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is approx. 60-80 cm.

The automatic display of the zoom view can be disabled in the Infotainment screen:

Press  below the Infotainment screen and select Panoramic camera.

Press  Activate View Adaptation.

The setting is memorized when the ignition is switched off.

### Settings menu

The settings menu allows to adjust the following settings:

- volume of the audible signal

### Deactivation

The rear view camera is deactivated when:

- driving faster than 12 km/h in a forward direction
- by pressing the icon X in the left upper corner in the Infotainment screen.

### System limitations

#### CAUTION

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lens of the camera, which is located between the number plate lights, always clean. The rear view camera can be cleaned by a washer nozzle which is automatically activated when the rear window washer is operating. To wipe away water drops from the lens, use a soft cloth.

Do not clean the lens with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- surrounding is dark
- sun or beam of headlights is shining directly into camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- camera lenses blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. The rear camera can be cleaned by activating the rear window washer.

Rear window wiper and washer



- the tailgate will be opened
- vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- vehicle had a rear end accident
- extreme temperature changes

### Panoramic view system

This system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a full 360° picture in the Infotainment screen, like a bird's eye view.

**⚠ WARNING**

The panoramic view system does not replace driver vision. It will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects outside of the camera view area, e. g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the panoramic view system.

Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving. Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen. Depending on the load of the vehicle, the inclination of the vehicle may be changed including the view of the camera.

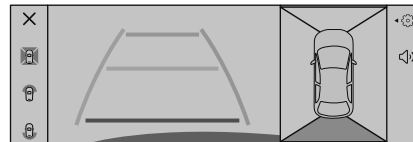
The system uses:

- rear camera above the rear number plate



- front camera
- two side cameras in the exterior mirrors
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the bumpers

**Visualization on the Infotainment screen**



The screen is divided into four areas, from left to right:

- selectable views: standard, panoramic front, panoramic rear
- view visualization

- top view including four selectable side views (in standard view only)
- settings

The parking sensors complete the information on the top view.

**Activation**

The panoramic view system is activated by:

- engaging the reverse gear when the engine is switched on
- manual activation in the Infotainment screen when the vehicle speed is below 16 km/h

Infotainment screen ⇨ 95

**Functionality**



Different views can be selected in the left part of the display. Change the type of view at any time during a maneuver by selecting a view from the left side:

- standard view
- panoramic view

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

- side view

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected. By default, the zoom view is enabled. This setting can be changed in the settings of the panoramic view system in the Infotainment screen.

The state of the system is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

### Standard view

The standard view consists of a rear view and a front view.

### Rear view

The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the steering angle.

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper.

The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.

This view is available in auto mode or can be chosen from the left side of the screen.

### Front view

The area in front the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the steering angle.

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's front bumper.

The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.

This view is displayed automatically or can be chosen from the left side of the screen.

### Panoramic view

The panoramic view facilitates leaving a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete maneuver. This view can only be selected from the left side of the screen.

### Side view

This view allows to view the surroundings, e.g. a pavement, a low wall, the vehicle parked to the next etc. on

the left-hand or right-hand side of the vehicle.


Select the standard view and touch the required side of the vehicle. The selected side is highlighted and the side view is displayed.

### Zoom view

The zoom view cannot be selected. It is only displayed if the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than 60-80 cm.

The zoom provides a view from above the rear or the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings. Thus, the vehicle can be maneuvered around obstacles nearby.

The automatic display of the zoom view can be disabled in the Infotainment screen:

Press  below the Infotainment screen and select **Panoramic camera**.

Press .

Activate **View Adaptation**.

The setting is memorized when the ignition is switched off.

### Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:


- volume of the audible signal

**Deactivation**


Panoramic view system is deactivated when:


- driving faster than 16 km/h in forward gear
- by pressing the icon **X** in the left upper corner of the touch screen

**System limitations**


 <b>CAUTION</b>
<p>For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lenses of all cameras always clean. For the rear view camera, there is a washer nozzle which will be activated when the rear window washer is operating.</p> <p>If manually cleaning the lenses of the cameras, rinse the lenses with water and wipe with a soft cloth. Do not clean the lenses with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.</p>


The panoramic view system may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. The rear camera can be cleaned by activating the rear window washer.  
Rear window wiper and washer  52
- The vehicle is towing an electrically connected trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- The vehicle had an accident. Contact a workshop.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<p>It is very important that any repair to the panoramic view system is performed accurately according to Opel specifications. Otherwise, the system may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behavior and / or messages from the system.</p>

**Rear cross traffic alert**

 <b>CAUTION</b>
<p>The driver must monitor the surroundings before and during the whole maneuver. Drive slowly and carefully in reverse gear in case of reduced or no visibility. It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.</p>


 <b>NOTE</b>
<p>If repainting the rear bumper, consult a qualified workshop since certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar units.</p>

Rear cross traffic alert warns of cross traffic from left or right side when driving rearwards at a speed up to 10 km/h. It warns of approaching objects such as vehicles, trucks, pedestrians, cyclists and motorcycles. To monitor the area left and right behind the vehicle, the system uses

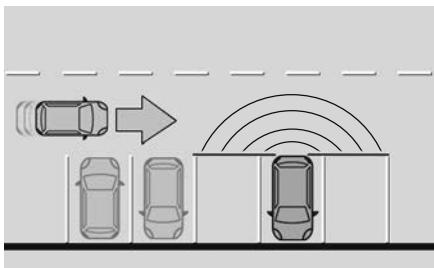
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

two radar sensors located in the rear bumper on each side of the vehicle.

### Activation / deactivation



The system can be activated/deactivated in the vehicle customization on the cluster, accessing the menu with .

### Detection zone



The system detects obstacles moving at speeds faster than 3 km/h and at a maximum distance of 40 m.

### Functionality


If an approaching obstacle is detected while the vehicle is in reverse gear,  or  flashes on the cluster. In addition, an audible signal is given when the vehicle is moving backwards.

### System limitations

The system may not operate properly in the following situations:

- towing trailer
- using a bicycle carrier on a towing device
- extreme temperature changes
- the rear bumper damaged
- accumulation or projection of external elements (e.g. mud, ice, snow), application of stickers.

### Fault

In the event of a fault,  appears in the cluster, accompanied by a message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Driver's Attention Assistance System


### Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD)


The driver alert system monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings.

The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Taking a break is recommended as soon as feeling tired or at least every two hours. Do not drive when feeling tired.


### Activation or Deactivation

The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle customization  95.

When the system is deactivated  may illuminate on the cluster.

The system is automatically activated when ignition is switched on.

### Driving time alert

The driver gets notified by a pop-up reminder symbol  on the cluster simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 65 km/h. The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.

The counting of driving time alert is reset when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes or the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened.

### Driver drowsiness detection

Depending on version the system uses different cameras to monitor the driver's level of vigilance:

- a front view camera outside the vehicle at the top of the windshield
- a driver monitoring camera inside the vehicle on the driver side next to the windshield facing the driver

#### WARNING


To avoid risk of eye damage: Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel.


### Driver Drowsiness Detection With Front View Camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 65 km/h. The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring. During this period, the driver's individual driving behavior is analyzed and no alert is given. The camera detects variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests a certain level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, an alert is triggered. In certain driving conditions such as poor road surface or strong winds etc., the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

### Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message,  illuminates and an audible signal is given.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal and .

### Driver drowsiness and distraction detection with driver monitoring camera


The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 20 km/h. The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements. The system does not record any video nor is it capable of identifying the driver.


The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- micro-sleep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

### Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given. Additionally  illuminates.

If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. micro-sleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by  and a more pronounced audible signal. Drowsiness and micro-sleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## Reinitialisation

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialized in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 65 km/h for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

## System Limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:



- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc. dazzle caused by headlights of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads


- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers


In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- the driver is wearing sunglasses with an infrared transmittance of less than 70%
- the driver monitoring camera is exposed to extremely high temperatures

## Fault

If the system has a fault,  illuminates on the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a workshop.  
 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs to be cleaned.

If  still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a workshop.

 illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the driver's face was not detected by the driver monitoring camera due to e.g. sunglasses.

## Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

### Hill start assist

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, brakes remain on for further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

The system is active if the following conditions are met:

- vehicle stationary
- brake pedal depressed
- driver's door closed

## Utility Assistance Features

### Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)

**⚠ WARNING**

The actual traffic sign always takes priority over the traffic sign displayed on the cluster.

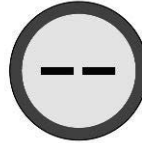
Depending on version, there are two different systems available.

#### Intelligent Speed Assistance

Using the camera at the top of the windshield and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system detects and reads speed limit signs and end of speed limits on the cluster. Up to two speed limit signs including supplementary signs are displayed in the cluster. If several speed limits are recognized, the vehicle may analyze and display the valid speed limit.

When a traffic sign for a certain area, e.g. city or motorway, is recognized and the vehicle is fitted with integrated navigation, the corresponding speed limit will also be displayed.

If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:



If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 5 km/h, the speed limit displayed flashes about ten seconds.


Speed limiter ⇨ 154.

Cruise control ⇨ 155.


Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 155.

#### Activation

The speed limit function of the traffic sign assistant is activated via the **Drive Assist**.

Press  below the Infotainment screen and activate **Drive Assist**.



Press  at the steering wheel successively until the Drive Assist mode is selected.


The **Drive Assist** screen is displayed in on the cluster.

Infotainment screen ⇨ 95

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

## Deactivation



Press  successively until the mode to switch off assistance is selected.

## Updating navigation map data

To maintain the performance of the system, the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals. Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

## Advanced Intelligent Speed Assistance

This system displays permanently speed limit information in the cluster independent of vehicle speed.

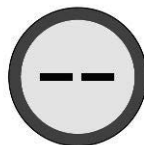
Providing the speed limit information involves the following systems, depending on version:


- camera at the top of the windshield
- vehicle's integrated navigation system
- telematics service

If traveling on a road with no speed restrictions, e.g., on German motorways, the following sign is displayed:




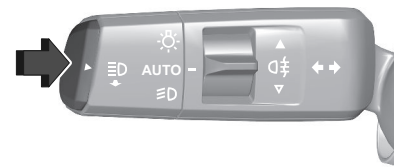
If no speed limit information can be provided, the following sign is displayed:



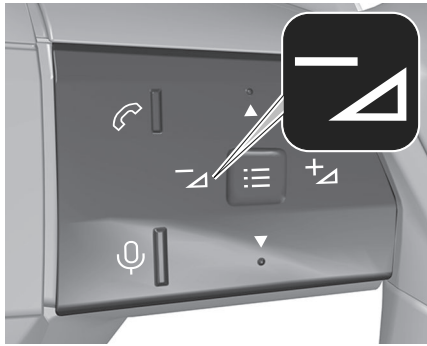
If a new speed limit is provided, a confirmation chime is given. The confirmation chime can be activated / deactivated on the Infotainment screen. Infotainment screen  95

If driving at a speed of at least 20 km/h and exceeding the speed limit, the speed limit displayed on the cluster flashes after some time and an audible signal is given after some time. Time of occurrence varies. Both flashing and audible signal are terminated after a few seconds. Due to legal requirements, the audible signal can only be deactivated until the next time the ignition is switched on. Depending on version, the audible signal can be deactivated by:

- long press on 
- long press on the button



- long press on 



If the audible signal is deactivated, illuminates for a few seconds.

In case of a failure, illuminates permanently. Consult a workshop.

Speed limiter 154

Cruise control 155

Adaptive cruise control 155

**Fault**

If the system has a fault, illuminates on the cluster, a message is displayed and an audible signal is given. Consult a workshop.

illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs

to be cleaned. If still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a workshop.

**Operation conditions**

To provide country-specific speed limit information, the vehicle needs to identify the country it is currently in. If a corresponding country list is available in the Infotainment screen, the respective country has to be selected manually. Otherwise, the country is automatically selected.

To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.

Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.

This is not impacted by the privacy settings of Opel Connect.

<b> NOTE</b>
It is possible to report a permanent speed limit misinformation on our website.

**Updating data**

To maintain the performance of the system, the vehicle software and the

navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals.

A navigation map update is available at least once per year. Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

For vehicle software update consult a workshop.

**System limitations**

Traffic sign assistant may not operate properly when:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Driving with snow chains.
- The area of the windshield, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- The visibility is limited because of the weather, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The vehicle ahead is creating road spray.
- Dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Speed limitation is painted on the surface of the road.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged or have been removed.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
- Depending on version, the navigation map data may be outdated.

 **CAUTION**

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to recognise certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system.

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Always adapt speed regarding road, traffic and weather conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.

When driving abroad make sure the vehicle uses the speed unit of the respective country. If necessary, select the correct units in the Info Display.

## IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

### Hazard Warning Lights Activating Hazard Warning Lights



- Pressing this button causes all the direction indicators to flash.

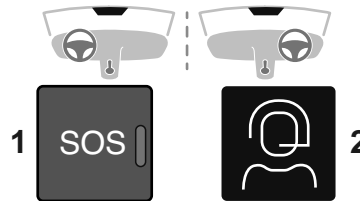
They can work with the ignition switched off.

### Automatic Hazard Warning Lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration,

the hazard warning lights illuminates automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. They can be switched off by pressing the button.

### Assist and SOS



- (1) eCall (SOS)
- (2) ASSISTANCE

Privacy mode can be configured in the Settings menu on the touch screen.

### Emergency call

#### **i** NOTE

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS satellite link. Depending

on equipment, a backup battery is used.

#### **i** NOTE

The service is only available for markets where it is legally required. Furthermore, it depends on the availability of the emergency centres and the infrastructure in the country.

#### **i** NOTE

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a backup battery is used.

#### **i** NOTE

The service is only available for markets where it is legally required.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

Furthermore, it depends on the availability of the emergency centres and the infrastructure in the country.

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP). A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

### Emergency Call (eCall)

#### **i** NOTE

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a backup battery is used.

#### **i** NOTE

The service is only available for markets where it is legally required. Furthermore, it depends on the availability of the emergency centres and the infrastructure in the country.

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP). A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

### Status LED in the overhead console

Illuminates green and red and extinguishes after a short time, when the ignition is switched on: the system works properly.

Illuminates red: fault in the system.

Contact a workshop.

Flashes red: backup battery needs replacement. Contact a workshop.

### Manual emergency call

In case of an emergency, press the red SOS button (1) in the overhead console for more than two seconds.

The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active. Pressing the SOS button immediately a second time will terminate the call.

The LED switches off.

### Automatic Emergency Call (eCall)

#### Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

#### Assistance Call

If the vehicle breaks down, press button (2) for more than 2 seconds to request assistance.

A voice message will confirm that a connection is being established.

Opel Connect comprises multiple connected services accessible via app, online or within the vehicle.

#### **i** NOTE

Opel Connect is not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

**i NOTE**

Full functionality of Opel Connect is subject to registration and proper activation.

Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information and vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts. Services accessible within the vehicle also include emergency call and breakdown call. These functions are automatically activated. Terms and conditions apply. Emergency call ➡ 194.

**Breakdown call**

Pressing the **Q** button in the overhead console for more than two seconds connects to a roadside assistance service provider. For information about coverage and scope of services of the roadside assistance, please refer to the information provided by the Opel Distributor with the order form.

**Privacy settings**

Privacy settings of Opel Connect can be configured. This will impact the set of data being sent, e.g., in case

a breakdown call is triggered. The emergency call function will not be impacted.

Depending on version, the privacy settings can be changed by simultaneously pressing **Q** and **SOS** in the overhead console or via the system settings menu in the Infotainment screen.

**i NOTE**

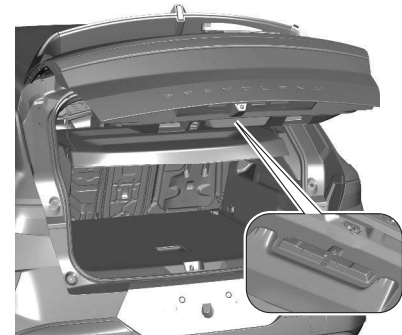
Language depends on the geographic coverage of the eCall And Assistance Call systems and the system language of the vehicle.

**Warning Triangle****Warning Triangle Kit**

This reflective and collapsible device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

**⚠ WARNING****Before getting out of the vehicle**

Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.



The warning triangle is stored in the space at the rear of the load compartment and secured with the Velcro® fastener.

1

2

3

4

5

6

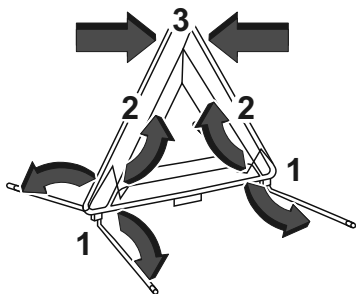
7

8

9

10

## Assembling The Warning Triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.

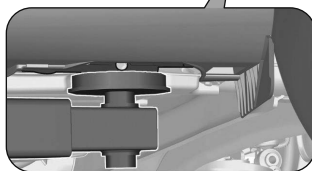
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

## Placing The Triangle

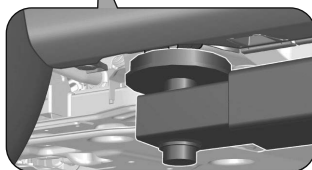
Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

## Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing

The jacking positions shown refer to the use of lifting arms and accessory jacks used for changing winter / summer tires.



The rear arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point. On BEV vehicles, there is a protective cover that must be removed first.



The front arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

## Wheel Changing Toolkit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.

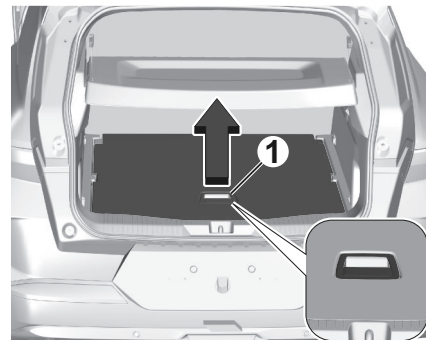
### **⚠ WARNING**

The tool kit is specific to the vehicle and may vary depending on version. Do not use it for any other purposes.

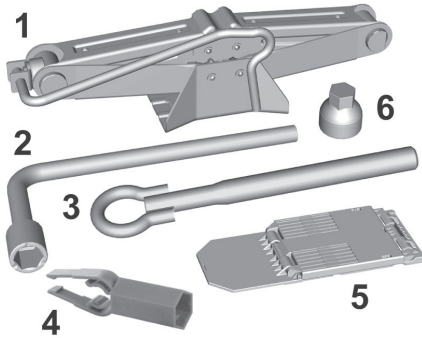
Depending on version the vehicle tools are located in a toolbag in the load compartment or below the floor cover.

### **Vehicles with/without spare wheel**

Open the floor cover of the load compartment using the handle (1).



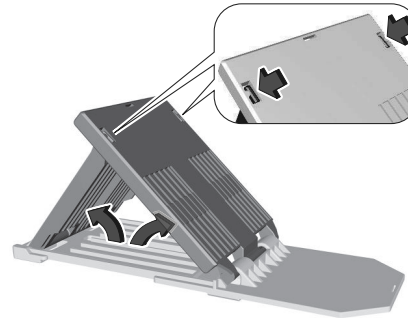
The tools are located in the tool bag.



- (1) Jack with integrated handle; to raise the vehicle
- (2) Wheel brace; to remove the wheel bolts
- (3) Removable towing eye
- (4) Bolt cover removal tool (for alloy wheels)
- (5) Chock to immobilize the vehicle (depending on equipment)
- (6) Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment); to adapt the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts

Depending on version, the chock, the towing eye and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts may be located in a bag together with the tire repair kit → 200.

For vehicles with spare wheel the jack and wheel wrench is located in a toolbox inside the spare wheel.



To use the chock, fold apart and stick together.

## Spare wheel

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though

no label at the spare wheel indicates this.

If there is a label on the spare wheel, the permissible speed still depends on the country regulations.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

### ⚠ CAUTION

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tires could affect driveability. Have the defective tire replaced as soon as possible.

## Wheel Removal

1. Open the floor cover.
2. The spare wheel is secured with a wing nut. Unscrew nut and take out the spare wheel.
3. If, after a wheel change, no wheel is placed in the spare wheel well, fasten the wing nut and close the floor cover.
4. After a wheel change back to a full size wheel, place the spare wheel

1

2

3

4

5

6

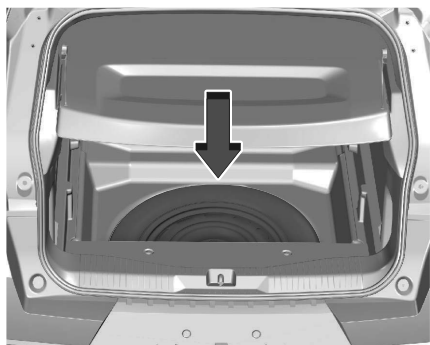
7

8

9

10

outside up in the well and secure with the wing nut.



## Changing a wheel

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
3. Place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
4. Retrieve the spare from the trunk.
5. Never change more than one wheel at once.

6. Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tire change.
7. The jack is maintenance-free.
8. If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
9. Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
10. No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
11. Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
12. Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
13. Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

### **WARNING**

Do not grease wheel bolts.

### **WARNING**

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for

temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Note that the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt if the wheel bolts for the alloy wheel rims are used. In this case, the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel.

1. Disengage wheel bolt caps with the wheel bolt cover remover. Attach the wheel wrench and loosen each wheel bolt by half a turn.

Vehicle tools ⇨ 196

Steel wheel rims with cover:  
Pull off the wheel cover.

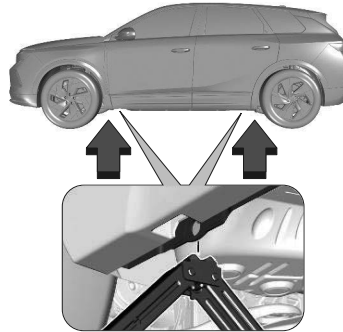


The wheels might be protected by locking wheel bolts. To loosen these specific bolts, first attach the adapter for the locking wheel bolts onto the head of the bolt before installing the wheel wrench.

The adapter for the locking wheel nuts may be located in a toolbag in the load compartment or in a bag together with the tire repair kit.

Vehicle tools ⇨ 199

Tire repair kit ⇨ 200

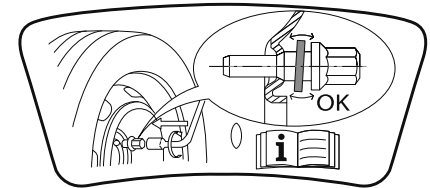


2. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.
3. Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.
4. Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.
5. With the jack correctly aligned, jack up until wheel is clear of the ground.

6. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
7. Change the wheel.

## Wheel Installation

1. Screw on the wheel nuts.
2. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
3. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and tighten each bolt in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque for 15" is 100 Nm and for 16" is 115 Nm.



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, note that the wheel bolts can also be used for the spare wheel with steel rims. In this case, the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

Vehicles with wheel cover: align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tire valve before installing.

4. Install wheel nut caps.
5. Stow the replaced wheel, the vehicle tools and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts ➡ 196.
6. Check the tire pressure of the installed tire and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

### WARNING

Do not exceed 80 km/h. Use only for a short distance, replace with a standard wheel as soon as possible. Expect altered handling: steering response, braking, and stability may be affected.

## After Wheel Changing

### WARNING

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.  
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tyre pressure checked.  
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

### Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment

The spare wheel well is not designed for other tire sizes than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the load compartment and secured properly.

Loading information ➡ 60 .

## Tire Repair Toolkit

Minor damage to the tire tread can be repaired with the tire repair kit. Do not remove foreign bodies from the tires.

Tire damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tire's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tire repair kit.

### WARNING

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Do not use for a lengthy period. Steering and handling may be affected.

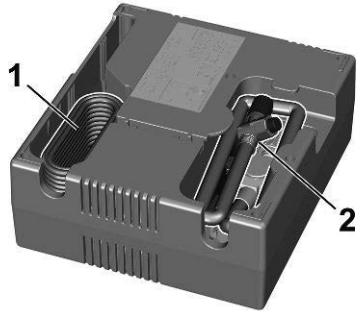
### NOTE

In the case of a flat tire: apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.

Depending on version the location of the tire repair kit is different:

- at the left side of the load compartment
  - below the third row seats with the seats folded
  - behind the third row seat with the seats unfolded.
1. Remove the sealant bottle and the compressor.

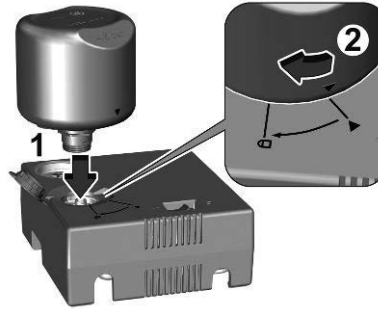
2. Pull the speed limit label from the sealant bottle and place it in driver's field of view.



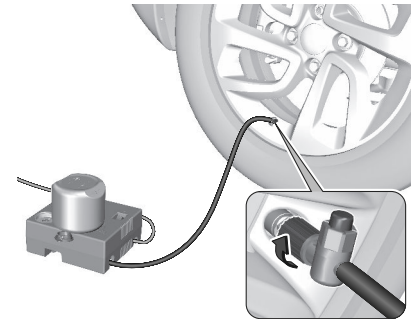
3. Remove the electric connection cable (1) and air hose (2) from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.



4. Open the sealant bottle and lift the lid.



5. First, insert the sealant bottle (1) into the compressor and align the triangle symbols (2). Then, push down the sealant bottle and turn it to the lock position.
6. Set the compressor near the tire in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.
7. Unscrew the valve cap from the defective tire.



8. Screw the filler hose to the tire valve.
9. The switch on the compressor must be set to **O**.
10. Connect the compressor plug to the 12 V power outlet.  
To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric engine is ready.

1

2

3

4

5

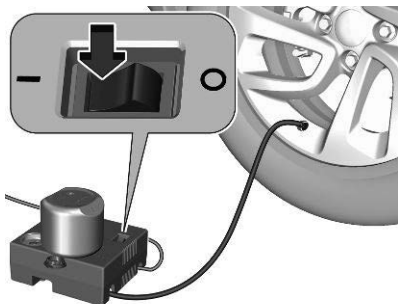
6

7

8

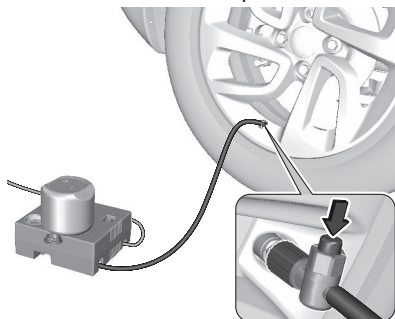
9

10



11. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to I. The tire is filled with sealant.
12. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 600 kPa (6 bar) whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.
13. All of the sealant is pumped into the tire. Then the tire is being inflated.
14. The prescribed tire pressure should be obtained within ten minutes. Tire pressure  $\rightarrow$  229.  
When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor. If the prescribed tire pressure is not obtained within ten minutes, remove the tire repair kit. Move the vehicle one tire rotation.

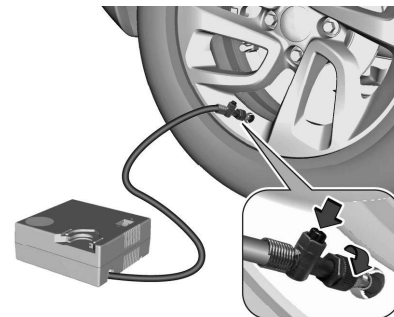
Reattach the tire repair kit and continue the filling procedure for ten minutes. If the prescribed tire pressure is still not obtained, the tire is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.



Drain excess tire pressure with the button on the air hose.

Do not run the compressor longer than ten minutes.

15. Detach the tire repair kit. Remove the sealant bottle from the compressor. Screw the filler hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow the tire repair kit in its designated position.
16. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.



17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tire. Drive between 20km/h and 60km/h. After driving approx. 5 km but no more than ten minutes, stop and check tire pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tire valve when doing this. Fill tire as described before. Drain excess tire pressure with the button on the air hose. If tire pressure hasn't decreased under 200 kPa (2 bar), set it to the correct value. Otherwise the vehicle must not be used. Seek assistance of a workshop. Repeat the checking procedure once more after driving further 10 km but no more than ten minutes to

check that there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tire pressure has fallen below 200 kPa (2 bar), the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

18. Stow the tire repair kit in its designated position.

### NOTE

The driving characteristics of the repaired tire are severely affected, therefore have this tire replaced. If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn the compressor off for at least 30 min. The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 700 kPa (7 bar). Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to the storage information on the sealant bottle. Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws. The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

## Jump Starting

Do not start with quick charger. A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

### CAUTION

Only jump start another vehicle with an ICE vehicle.

### WARNING

Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

### WARNING

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

### WARNING

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

### WARNING

#### Frozen battery

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion! If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

#### MHEV recommendation

On **MHEV** versions, recharging the 12V battery allows starting of the engine

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

and also charging the 48V traction battery via the DC-DC converter.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not try to charge the hybrid system directly.**

The hybrid system is connected to the 12 V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behaviour of the system.

**BEV recommendation**

**i NOTE**

**Flat 12 V battery**

It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Precautions before working on the accessory battery**

Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument

panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Jump-starting another vehicle**

Do not use the 12 V battery to jumpstart another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

**Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery**

**⚠ WARNING**

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps**

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps.

Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps! Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

**i NOTE**

If the 12V battery is completely discharged, the electric door locks will not function and prevent access to the hood release lever.

Refer to **Keys- Central locking not functioning** for more information.

**Accessing the 12V battery**

The 12V battery is located under the hood.

**i NOTE**

Refer to the "**Engine compartment - Opening the Hood**" section.

**Before starting the procedure**

- Be sure the ignition is switched off.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (infotainment system, lighting, wipers, etc.).

- Make sure the assisting vehicle is switched off and not in contact with the flat vehicle.
- Ensure the jump leads are in good condition.

### Before starting the procedure

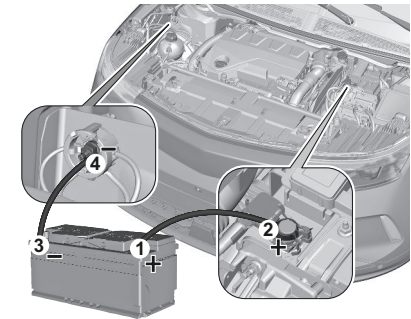
- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump leads.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 V). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm<sup>2</sup>.
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.

- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the electric parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in **P**.

### Connecting the leads

1. Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.
2. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery (1).
3. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (2).
4. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3).
5. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment (4).

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.



### Starting operation

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
2. For **ICE** or **MHEV**, operate the starter of the broken-down vehicle and let the engine run.
3. For **BEV**, press the **START/STOP** button on the broken-down vehicle and wait for the **READY** indicator to appear.
4. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
5. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

6. Switch on electric consumers e.g. headlights, heated rear window.
7. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

### Disconnecting the leads

1. Disconnect the jump leads in **reverse order**.
2. Refit the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if fitted.
3. Let the engine run for at least 30 minutes (vehicle stationary) to allow the battery to accumulate an adequate amount of charge.

#### WARNING

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functionalities.

## Charging Another Vehicle

Procedure for starting another vehicle is identical to the procedure of **"Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery"**, under the point of view of the assisting vehicle.

#### WARNING

Ensure the supplying battery is fully charged and in optimal operating conditions.

#### WARNING

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

## 12V Battery Charger

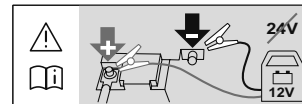
A 12V battery charger is a portable power device designed to provide a very high electrical current for a short period of time in order to start a vehicle when the 12V Battery is discharged. Never start the vehicle by connecting a Battery Charger (also referred to as a Battery Maintainer), as it is suitable only to for prolonged operations of restoring the battery charge or to maintaining it at an optimal level, using a standard household electrical supply in an indoor environment.

#### WARNING

Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

#### CAUTION

If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



## Disconnecting - Connecting Battery

To maintain sufficient charge for vehicle starting, it is recommended to disconnect the 12V battery if the vehicle will remain unused for an extended period.. Before disconnecting the battery:

- close all openings (doors, trunk, windows).
- switch off all electrical devices (infotainment system, wipers, lights, etc.).

- switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

When accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

## After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait at least 1 minute before starting the engine to allow the electronic systems to initialize.

If minor issues persist after this procedure, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Some equipment may need to be re-initialized according to the relevant sections, including:

- Electronic key
- Electric windows
- Date and time
- Preset radio stations

## Towing

### NOTE

#### General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

### NOTE

In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).


### WARNING

**A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:**

- broken down on a motorway or main road
- not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake
- not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running
- towing with only two wheels on the ground
- four-wheel drive vehicle
- no approved towbar available

## Towing The Vehicle

### Accessing the tools

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools  196.

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

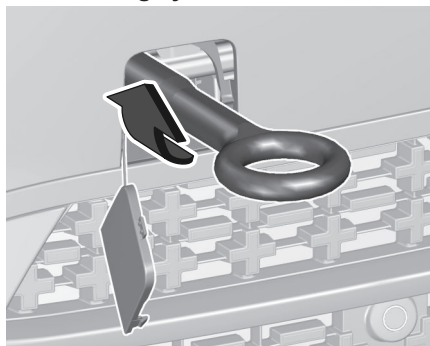
8

9

10



Remove the cap.  
**Front towing eye**



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position. Attach the tow rod to the towing eye. The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windshield wiper.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

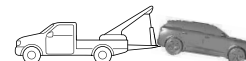
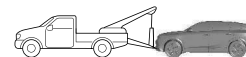
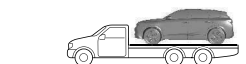
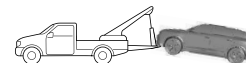
Switch the selector lever to neutral. Release the parking brake.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.



When towing the vehicle, always lift the driven wheels off the road. In the case of the BEV AWD version, carry the vehicle on the platform. Seek the assistance of a workshop. After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the outer flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

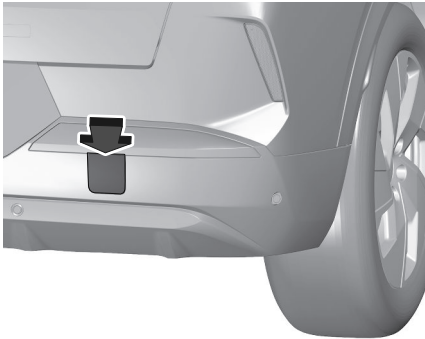
**Towing another vehicle**

**⚠ WARNING**

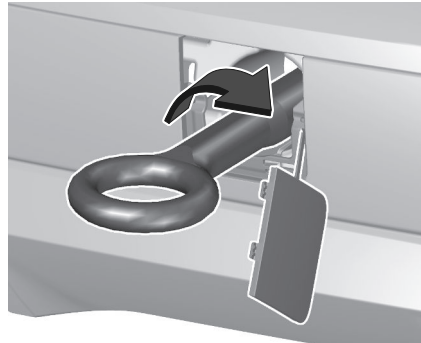
For Hybrid 48 V vehicles in high altitude conditions (>2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

For Hybrid (48 V) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

**Rear cap**

Remove the cap.  
The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools → 196.

**Rear towing eye**

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position. Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye. The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily.  
Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## MAINTENANCE AND VEHICLE CARE

### General Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.

Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a workshop for customized service schedules.

### Accessories and vehicle modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for this vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Opel. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel consumption, CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

#### CAUTION

Access to the diagnostic socket associated with the on-board electron-

ics is reserved for qualified technicians and approved tools.

#### CAUTION

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

### Mobile phones and CB radio equipment

The vehicle specific installation instructions and the operating guidelines of the mobile phone and hands-free manufacturer must be observed when installing and operating a mobile telephone. Failure to do so could invalidate the vehicle type approval. Recommendations for fault-free operation:

- Professionally installed exterior antenna to obtain the maximum range possible.
- Maximum transmission power 10W.

- Installation of the phone in a suitable spot, consider the area in which the airbag inflates → 37.

Seek advice on predetermined installation points for the external antenna or equipment holder and ways of using devices with a transmission power exceeding 10W.

Use of a hands-free attachment without external antenna with mobile telephone standards GSM 900/1800/1900 and UMTS is only permitted if the maximum transmission power of the mobile telephone is 2W for GSM 900 or 1W for the other types.

For reasons of safety, do not use the phone while driving. Even use of a hands-free set can be a distraction while driving.

**⚠ WARNING**

Operation of radio equipment and mobile telephones which fail to meet above mentioned mobile telephone standards is only permitted using an antenna located outside of the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Mobile telephones and radio equipment may lead to malfunctions in the vehicle electronics when operated inside the vehicle with no exterior antenna, unless the above mentioned regulations are observed.

**Very Cold Climate Covers**

(Depending on country)

It is recommended to have the cold protection covers installed by a workshop.

**⚠ WARNING**

The cold protection covers must be removed when one of the following conditions occurs:

- The ambient temperature is above 10 °C.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle is driven at speeds above 120 km/h.

**End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal**

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.



**High voltage battery**

The high voltage battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations are followed. If it becomes necessary to replace the high voltage battery, contact a workshop for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

## Service information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.

Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a workshop for customized service schedules.

Service display  70.

### Confirmations

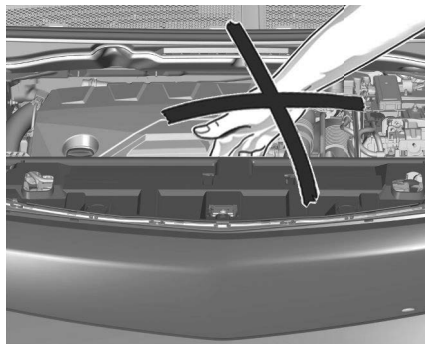
Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet.

The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

## Scheduled Servicing

### Periodic Checks



### WARNING

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off.

The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

### BEV

### DANGER

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.



### DANGER

Electric or Hybrid versions:  
Never try to perform maintenance work on high voltage components yourself. You may be injured and the vehicle may be damaged. Service and repair of these high voltage components should only be performed by a trained service technician with proper knowledge and tools. Exposure to high voltage may cause shock, burns, and even death. The high voltage components

in the vehicle can only be serviced by technicians with special training. High voltage components are identified by labels. Do not remove, open, take apart, or modify these components. High voltage cable or wiring has orange covering. Do not probe, tamper with, cut, or modify high voltage cable or wiring.

**⚠ WARNING**

Electric or Hybrid versions:  
Only perform engine compartment checks when the vehicle is off. The cooling fan may start operating even if the vehicle is off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Electric or Hybrid versions:  
Even small amounts of contamination to the liquids can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

## Checking Fluids Level

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

**⚠ WARNING**

The fluids must comply with the Manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

**⚠ WARNING**

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

## Used products

**⚠ WARNING**

Avoid prolonged contact of used fluids with the skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Engine Oil



The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

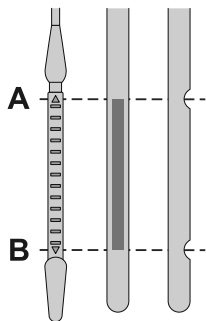
**⚠ WARNING**

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

**Checking using the dipstick**

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

- Grasp the dipstick by its colored grip and pull it out completely.
- Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



- Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (MAX)** and **B (MIN)**.

**Do not start the engine if the level is:**

- above mark **A**: contact a dealer or qualified workshop.
- below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Oil grade**

Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your dealer or qualified workshop). Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

**Topping up the engine oil level**

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never remove the oil filler cap with the engine running. Risk of burns and splashes inside the engine compartment.

- Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- Top up the level if necessary.
- After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick back into its tube up to the stop.

**⚠ WARNING**

The dipstick must be pushed completely in to prevent oil from spilling onto the engine. Risk of fire inside the engine compartment.

**i NOTE**

The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for

30 minutes following an addition of oil.

### Washer Fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

#### **WARNING**

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.). The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windshield washer system.

### Brake fluid



The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

#### **WARNING**

Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

### Brakes

Depending on the driving style, the brake wear may vary significantly. The brake wear may increase when the vehicle is driven over short distances, e.g. in the city.

It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn. Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

### Engine coolant

#### For ICE and Hybrid 48 V versions



It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

As the cooling system is pressurized, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7


8


9

10

**BEV versions**

**⚠ CAUTION**

 Do not top up the coolant.



If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

**⚠ WARNING**

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

## Engine Oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Use the appropriate engine oil given on the service schedule sheet handed over by the selling dealer.

### Topping up engine oil

**⚠ CAUTION**

In case of any spilled oil, wipe it up and dispose it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Use of engine oils for all petrol engines with only ACEA quality is prohibited, since it can cause engine damage under certain operating conditions.

### Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

### Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil. Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Checking Fluids Level → 213

Recommended fluids and lubricants

→ 216

Capacities → 244

## Washer Fluid

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

### Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the tempera-

ture conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

**⚠ WARNING**

Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

**i NOTE**

The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windscreen washer system.

### Brake and Clutch Fluids

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval. Use only brake fluid approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

### Antifreeze Coolant

Use only antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop. The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion pro-

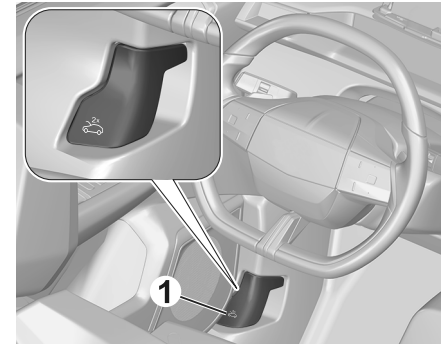
tection and frost protection down to approx. -28 °C. In cold regions with very low temperatures the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

## Engine Compartment

### Access to engine compartment

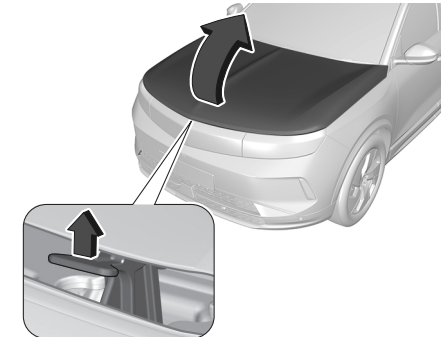
#### Opening

Open the driver's door (for left-hand drive versions) or the passenger door (for right-hand drive versions).



Pull **once** the interior release lever (1), located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you to unlock the hood.

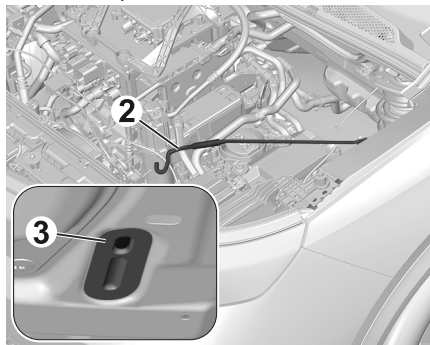
Pull **twice** the interior release lever (1) towards you to unlock the safety catch.



Raise the hood.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

Unclip the stay (2) from its housing and place it in the support slot (3) to hold the hood open



Secure the bonnet support.

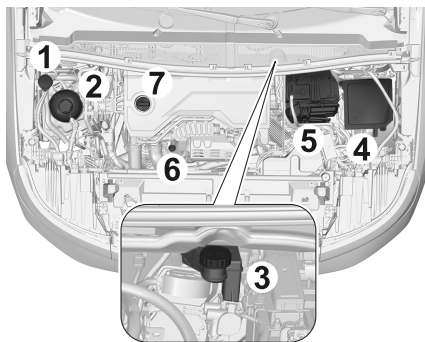
### Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.  
Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm).  
Check that the bonnet is engaged.

### CAUTION

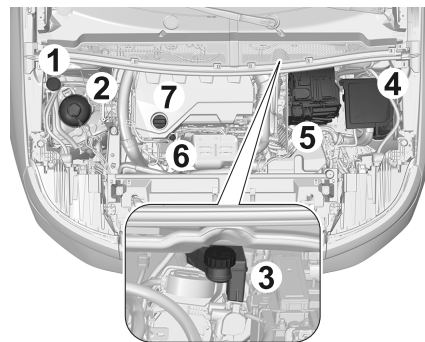
Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents

## Hybrid 48V Engine



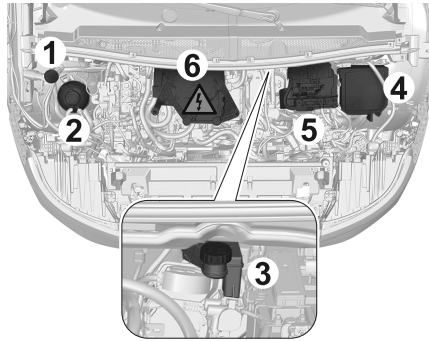
- 1 Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- 2 Engine coolant reservoir
- 3 Brake fluid reservoir
- 4 Fusebox
- 5 Battery/Fuses
- 6 Engine oil dipstick
- 7 Engine oil filler cap

## ICE / PHEV Engine



- 1 Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- 2 Engine coolant reservoir
- 3 Brake fluid reservoir
- 4 Fusebox
- 5 Battery/Fuses
- 6 Engine oil dipstick
- 7 Engine oil filler cap

## BEV Engine



- 1 Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- 2 Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
- 3 Brake fluid reservoir
- 4 Fusebox
- 5 Battery/Fuses
- 6 Electric motor

For more information on the **Charging system (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Checking Oil Level

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of engine oil is used. The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km. Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.

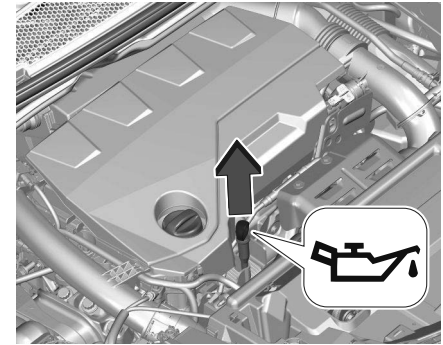
### ⚠ CAUTION

It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality oil in the engine.

Recommended fluids and lubricants



216  
The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km.



Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, reinsert it fully, pull out and read the engine oil level. Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

### ⚠ WARNING

Insert dipstick fully up to the stop on the handle. Ensure that no engine oil gets into the engine compartment, as this increases risk of fire.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up the engine oil.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

1

2

3

4

5

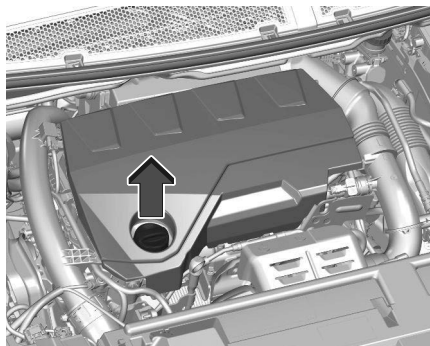
6

7

8

9

10



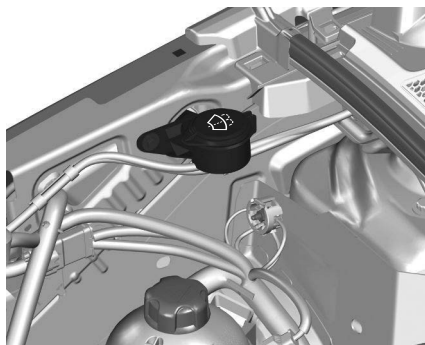
The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

## Adding Washer Fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved wind-shield washer fluid which contains anti-freeze.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Washer fluid ⇨ 216

## Adding Coolant Fluid

The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37°C.

**⚠ CAUTION**

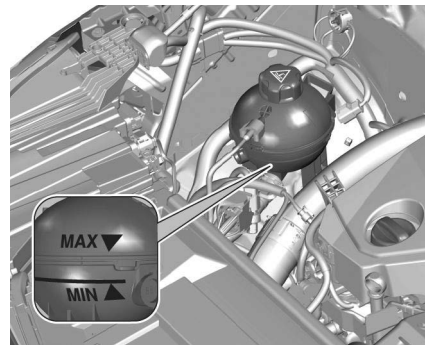
A too low coolant level can cause damage to the high voltage components.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Only use approved antifreeze.

Coolant and antifreeze ⇨ 216.

### Coolant Level PHEV/BEV



If the coolant level is at the MIN mark or below, seek the assistance of a workshop to have the engine coolant topped up.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Using the wrong engine coolant can cause severe damages to the high voltage battery. Only experienced mechanics are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

**Coolant Level ICE and Hybrid 48 V**

If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the MIN mark. Top up if the level is low.

**⚠ WARNING**

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

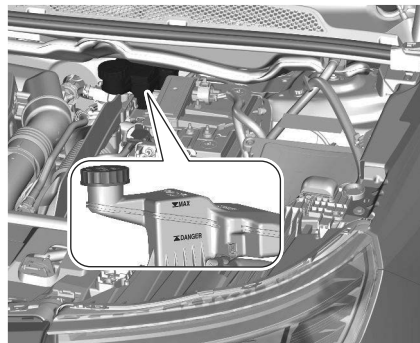
To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly.

Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

**Checking Brake Fluid**

**⚠ WARNING**

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. In the event of accidental contact, immediately wash the affected parts with water and mild soap. Then rinse thoroughly. Call a doctor immediately if swallowed.



The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **MIN** seek the assistance of a workshop.

**12V Battery**

The vehicle battery is maintenancefree provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point. Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

**⚠ WARNING**

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.  
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.  
Wash your hands afterwards.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps**

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps.  
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps!  
Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Automatic gearbox**

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion! If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

**Replacing the vehicle battery**

If necessary, replace the 12V battery with another original battery with the same specifications. Follow the battery manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

**i NOTE**

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to

temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the vehicle battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

All battery information can be found online at <https://public-service-box.opel.com/OVddb/OV/index.html>.

The vehicle battery has to be replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 122

**Check connections**

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

## Charging the vehicle battery

### **WARNING**

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

Jump starting  203



These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).

They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste. Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

## BEV versions

### **NOTE**

#### **Flat accessory battery**

It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

### **WARNING**

#### **Precautions before working on the accessory battery**

Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

### **WARNING**

#### **Jump-starting another vehicle**

Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

## Symbols

The following safety symbols are visible over the 12V battery:



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking



Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury



Keep the vehicle's battery out of reach of children



The vehicle's battery contains sulfuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns



For more information, refer to the **Owner's Manual**



Explosive gases can be present close to the battery

## Discharge protection

### Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear on the cluster.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, e.g. the heated rear window, the heated steering wheel, etc. The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

### Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible. A message appears on the cluster.

### Power outlet

The power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

### Power saving mode

This mode deactivates electrical consumers to avoid excessive discharging of the vehicle battery. These consumers, such as the Infotainment system, windshield wipers, low beam headlights, courtesy light, etc. can be used for a total maximum time of about 40 minutes after ignition is switched off.

### Changing into power saving mode

When power saving mode is activated, a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. An active telephone call using the hands-free option will be maintained for around ten minutes longer.

### Deactivating power saving mode

Power saving mode is deactivated automatically when the engine is restarted. Run the engine for a sufficient charge:

- for less than ten minutes to use the consumers for approx. five minutes
- for more than ten minutes to use the consumers for up to approx. 30 minutes

### Heating functionalities

#### NOTE

Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electrical loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

### High Voltage Battery

#### WARNING

Damage to the high voltage battery or high voltage system can create a risk of electric shock, overheating, or fire.

If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by a moderate to severe crash, it must be inspected as soon as possible by qualified personnel. Until the technical inspection has been carried out, the vehicle must be stored outside at a minimum distance of 5 metres from any structure or other flammable objects. If the vehicle has been damaged or affected by flood or fire, it must not be moved at all and has to be inspected by qualified personnel as soon as possible.

To preserve the range and the durability of the high voltage battery, the following is recommended:

- Whenever possible do not charge the high voltage battery more than 80%.
- Do not completely discharge the high voltage battery.

- Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than twelve hours) when the high voltage battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C and above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- Avoid charging the vehicle at low temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above 30 °C.
- Do not use the high voltage battery as a generator of energy.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the high voltage battery.

**Leakage**

Damage to the high voltage battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. The following is recommended:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, that the vehicle is equipped with a high voltage battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the high voltage battery.

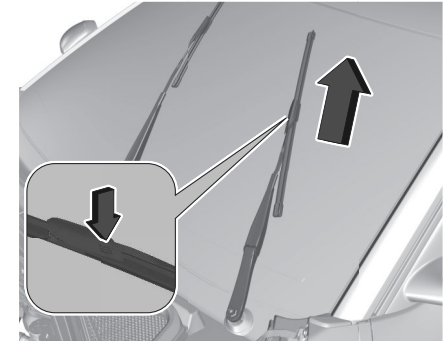
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the high voltage battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.
- Too low a coolant level must be topped up and the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

**Engine Washing**

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>
Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

**Vehicle Maintenance**  
**Wiper Blade Replacement**

**Windshield**



<b>⚠ CAUTION</b>
Never attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

To replace the wiper blades, place the wipers in the maintenance position:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Within 60 seconds, pull the wiper lever towards you.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

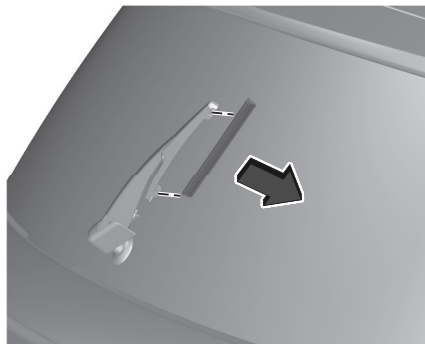
The wipers will move to a vertical position for easy access. Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove. Attach the new wiper blade to the wiper arm and push until it engages. To return the wipers to the normal position:

1. Gently place the wiper arms on the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Operate the wiper lever.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not allow the wiper arms to slam on the windshield. This can damage the blades and the windscreen.

**Rear window**



Lift the wiper arm only slightly until it engages. Disengage wiper blade and remove.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Attach the wiper blade to the inner position of the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully. Check that the wiper arm is not blocked while operating.

**Cabin Air Filter**



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

**i NOTE**

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odors.

**i NOTE**

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odors.

**Engine Oil Filter**



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

## Engine Air Filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

## Air Conditioner Maintenance

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year.

Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), change it twice as often, if necessary.

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

## Compartment Filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

### **i** NOTE

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odors.

## Automatic Transmission



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Fuses

### Changing a fuse

A defective fuse must be replaced by a workshop.

## Bulb Replacement

The exterior lights are equipped with LED technology and cannot be changed.

In the event of a malfunction of any exterior or interior light, contact a workshop.

### **⚠** WARNING

Do not touch the LED or Full LED technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

### **⚠** WARNING

#### Light-emitting diode (LED) headlights

In case of replacement of this type of light, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Tires and Wheels

The inflation pressure of all tires, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tires. The pressures indicated on the tire pressure label are valid for "cold" tires. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

10 kilometers at over 50 km/h, add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

**⚠ WARNING**

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tire pressures cause tires to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tires reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tires (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.

When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tires as soon as possible.

Using different size wheels and tires from those specified can affect the lifetime of tires, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tires on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

Always mark the direction of rotation on the tires that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tires. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.



Winter or 4-seasons tires can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

### Tire Safety Information

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tire and wheel damage. Do not trap tires on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

### Tire Markings / Designations

E.g. **215/60 R17 96H**

- 215:** tire width, mm
- 60:** cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width), %
- R:** belt type: Radial
- RF:** type: RunFlat
- 15:** wheel diameter, inches
- 91:** load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 615 kg
- T:** speed code letter

Speed code letter:

- Q:** up to 160 km/h
- S:** up to 180 km/h
- T:** up to 190 km/h
- H:** up to 210 km/h
- V:** up to 240 km/h
- W:** up to 270 km/h

Choose a tire appropriate for the maximum speed of the vehicle. The maximum speed is achievable at kerb weight with driver (75 kg) plus 125 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

## Directional tires

Directional tires should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

## Winter Tires

Winter tires improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view, if the tire speed code is below the maximum speed of the vehicle.

All tire sizes are permitted as winter tires → 229

## Tire pressure

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey.

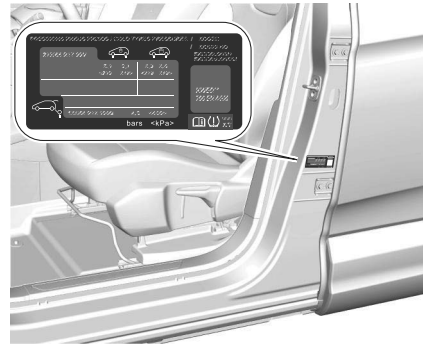
Do not forget the spare wheel → 197.

This also applies to vehicles with tire deflation detection system.

→ 230

The tire pressure information label on the left or right door frame indicates the

original equipment tires and the corresponding tire pressures.



Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load. Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.

Tire pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tire pressure value, follow the procedure below:

1. Identify the respective tire.
2. Identify the engine identifier code.

→ 241

The tire pressure tables show all possible tire combinations.

For the tires approved for your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents. The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tire pressure.

### WARNING

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tire warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tire blow-out at high speeds.

### WARNING

For specific tires the recommended tire pressure may exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire. Never exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire.

### Temperature dependency

The tire pressure depends on the temperature of the tire. During driving, tire temperature and pressure increase. Tire pressure values provided on the tire information label and tire pressure

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9



10

chart are valid for cold tires, which means at 20 °C.

The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tires are checked.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The tire deflation detection system continually checks the rotation speed of all four wheels and warns on low tire pressure condition once vehicle is driving. This is achieved by comparing tire rolling circumference with reference values and further signals.

If a tire loses pressure the control indicator  illuminates and a warning message is displayed on the cluster. Control indicator  79

In this case reduce speed, avoid sharp cornering and strong braking. Stop at next safe opportunity and check tire pressure.

After adjusting tire pressure initialize the system to extinguish the control indicator and restart the system.

If the failure continues to be displayed, contact a workshop. The system is inoperable when the ABS or Electron-



ic Stability Control has a fault or a temporary spare wheel is used. Once the tire has been refitted, check the tire pressure with cold tires and initialize the system.

### CAUTION

Deflation detection system warns just about low tire pressure condition and does not replace regular tire maintenance by the driver.

### System initialization

After tire pressure correction or wheel change, the system must be initialized to learn new circumference reference values:

1. Always ensure that all four tires have correct tire pressure  229
2. Apply parking brake.
3. Initialize the system via the Information Display  95
4. Reset is confirmed by a message.

After initialization the system automatically calibrates to new tire pressures during driving. After a longer drive the system will adopt and monitor new pressures.

Always check tire pressure with cold tires.

The system has to be reinitialized when:

- tire pressure has been changed
- Load condition has been changed
- Wheels have been swapped or exchanged

The system will not warn instantaneously on a tire blow out or a rapid deflation. This is due to required calculation time.

## Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals. For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tires on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. If directional tires are mounted, ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tires age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every 6 years.

### Allowed Tire and Rim Sizes

If tires of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be

necessary to reprogram the system and make other vehicle modifications. Have the label with tire pressures replaced.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The use of unsuitable tires or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

### Wheel Covers

Wheel covers and tires that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tire combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tires used are not factory approved, the tires must not have a rim protection ridge.

Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

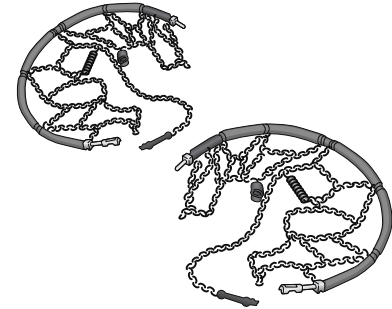
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Use of unsuitable tires or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheel rims: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

Temporary spare wheel: Do not use wheel covers

### Tire Chains



Tire chains are only permitted on the front wheels.

Only use tire chains designed to be used with tire type of the vehicle:

- For 18 inch and 19 inch tires, only use fine mesh tire chains that add no more than 9 mm to the tire tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).
- For 20 inch tires, only use Polaire PSGB 140 tire chains.

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

**i NOTE**

The use of tire chains and the maximum allowed speed is regulated by country-specific legislation.

**⚠ WARNING**

Damage may lead to tire blowout.

When fitting the tire chains follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the tire chains.

After having fitted the tire chains, stop the vehicle after having driven a short distance and make sure that the tire chains are correctly tightened.

**Temporary spare wheel**

The use of tire chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

## Vehicle Storage

### Long-time Storage of a Hybrid / Electric Vehicle

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

1. Wash the vehicle.
2. Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
3. Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
4. Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
5. Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
6. Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.
7. Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
8. Do not apply the parking brake.
9. Open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

#### Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

#### Four weeks to twelve months

1. Discharge the high voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the cluster.
2. Do not plug in the charging cable.
3. Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
4. Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high voltage battery.
5. Remove the black negative (-) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals in the engine compartment.
6. Every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent.

## Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

1. Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Initialize the power windows
2. Check tire pressure
3. Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
4. Check the engine oil level.
5. Check the coolant level.
6. Fit the number plate if necessary.

## Bodywork-Exterior Care

### General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

### Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

## Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windshield wiper and rear window wiper must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc. If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the hood as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminum to avoid damages.

### CAUTION

Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of 4 to 9.

Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

### Exterior lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

### Polishing and Waxing

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## Windows and Windshield Wiper Blades

Switch off wipers before handling in their areas.

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage. For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

## Wheels and Tires

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners. Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

## Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

## Underbody

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen / rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

## Towing Equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

## High Gloss Paint

### WARNING

Do not use abrasive products or solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.

Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains. Risk of scratching the paintwork!  
Do not apply polish.

### NOTE

Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.  
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfiber cloth.  
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.  
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

## Decals

(Depending on version)

### WARNING

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

### NOTE

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C). Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned. Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

## Interior Care

### General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle..

### Seat Belts Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth. Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

### Plastic and coated parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

### Instrument Cluster And Displays

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic. Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth.

### NOTE

Never use alcohol, petrol and derivatives to clean the dashboard and instrument panel lens.

## Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and paneling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clothing fabrics may not be colorfast. This could cause visible discolorations, especially on lightcolored upholstery. Removable stains and discolorations should be cleaned as soon as possible. Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**⚠ CAUTION**

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery. The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

**Glass Surfaces**

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with any commercial household-type glass cleaner.

Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments that may scratch the elements.

When cleaning the rear-view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or cloth that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

**i NOTE**

Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas.

**Fabric parts**

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and paneling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

Use a specific product to clean carpets and fabric upholstery.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush.

Clothing fabrics may not be colorfast.

This could cause visible discolorations, especially on light colored upholstery. Removable stains and discolorations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

It is advisable to use a moist brush on velvet upholstery. Rub the seats using a soft microfiber cloth moistened with a solution of water and neutral detergent. Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in

closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

**Floor Materials**

**⚠ WARNING**

If a floor mat has the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with pedals, what can cause unintended acceleration or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

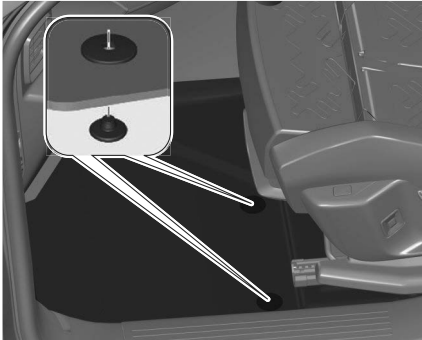
- The original equipment floor mats were designed for this vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it is recommended to buy certified floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver's side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver's side.

## Installing and removing the floor mats

The driver's side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.

To install the floor mat:

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.
3. Push the mat to the floor.



To remove the floor mat:

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Pull the floor mat upwards to remove.

### **WARNING**

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

The data presented in this chapter may not be exhaustive for each individual vehicle.

Always refer to the identification plate and identification papers for the most complete and accurate data for the specific vehicle.

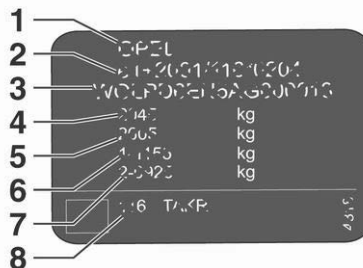
### Vehicle Identification

#### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windshield, or in the engine compartment on the right body panel.

#### Identification Plate

The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame. The layout and position differ for some export countries.



Information on identification label:

- 1 manufacturer
- 2 type approval number
- 3 vehicle identification number
- 4 permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
- 5 permissible gross train weight in kg
- 6 maximum permissible front axle load in kg
- 7 maximum permissible rear axle load in kg

- 8 manufacturer address, vehicle-specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight.

Vehicle's kerb weight depends on the specification of the vehicle, e.g. optional equipment and accessories. Refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications. Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

#### Engine Identification

The technical data tables use the engine identifier code. The engine data table additionally shows the engineering code.

Engine data ➡ 241.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity

provided with this vehicle or other national registration documents.

## Vehicle Data

### Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures. Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

#### NOTE

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, as defined by the Regulation EU 715/2007.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures. These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 meters. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 meters of altitude.

The maximum authorized nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

#### WARNING

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

#### WARNING

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100

km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## Dimensions

<b>Size</b>	<b>MHEV</b>	<b>PHEV</b>	<b>BEV</b>
Length [mm]	4650.1	4650.1	4650.1
Width [mm]	1904.8	1904.8	1904.8
Width with two exterior mirrors folded [mm]	1934	1934	1934
Width with two exterior mirrors [mm]	2108.3	2108.3	2108.3
Height (curb weight) [mm]	1665.2	1667.2	1666.4
Height on BIW (curb weight) [mm]	1648.2	1649.2	1648.7
Loading height	765.3	768.9	769.4
Height (with trunk lid open)	2093.3	2096.7	2098.2
Turning diameter between sidewalks [m]	10.90	10.93	10.93
Turning diameter between walls [m]	11.44	11.44	11.44
Wheelbase [mm]	2784.1	2784.1	2794.6
Fuel tank capacity [l] / Battery capacity [Ah]	55l	55l - 17 Ah (Netto) (21 Ah Brutto)	75 Ah (Netto) (85 Ah Brutto)

## Engine Data

### Hybrid 48V

<b>Engine identifier code</b>	<b>EB2LTDH2 EDCT6</b>
Gearbox	Electric dual-clutch automatic 6-speed
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,199
Fuel type	Unleaded
Authorized octane indexes	95 (recommended), 98, 91
<b>Electric engine</b>	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max power (kW)	21
Combined power (kW)	//
<b>Battery</b>	
Technology	Lithium-Ion
Voltage (Volts DC)	48
Useful capacity (kWh)	0.4

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**PHEV**

<b>Engine identifier code</b>	<b>EP6LTCHPD EDCT7</b>
Gearbox	Electric dual-clutch automatic 7-speed
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598
Fuel type	Unleaded
Authorized octane indexes	95 (recommended), 98, 91
<b>Electric engine</b>	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max power (kW)	92
Combined power (kW)	143
<b>Battery</b>	
Technology	Lithium-Ion
Voltage (Volts DC)	240-400
Useful capacity (kWh)	17.9

## BEV

Version	EV 210 Standard Range	EV 320 Standard Range	EV 230 High Range
Code	ELEC ZLC RGML 210 hp ZKZ	ELEC ZLX RGML_eRAD 320 hp AWD ZE	ELEC ZLC RGML 230 hp
Electric engine	Synchronous with permanent magnets	Synchronous with permanent magnets	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max power (kW/hp)	154/213	235/320	169/230
<b>Battery</b>			
Technology	Lithium-Ion		
Voltage (Volts DC)	400		
Useful capacity (kWh)	73 (FDB)	74 (ACC 11)	96.9 (ACC HR)
<b>Domestic charging</b>	<b>Mode 2</b>		
Alternating current (AC) voltage rating (A)	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16		
<b>Accelerated charging</b>	<b>Mode 3</b>		
Alternating current (AC) voltage rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32		
<b>Superfast charging</b>	<b>Mode 4</b>		
Direct current (DC) voltage	400		

## Towing Weights

For more information on towing:

➔ 147

### Hybrid 48V

Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient (kg)	850 <sup>1</sup> / 1,100 <sup>2</sup>
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	80

### Plug-in hybrid engines

Braked trailer (within the GTW)	1,500
---------------------------------	-------

limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient (kg)	
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	80

### BEV

Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient (kg)	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	80

## Engine Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	Viscosity grade	STLA specification	Recommended product
<b>EB2LT DH2</b>	SAE 0W20	955535/01	QUARTZ FPW01
<b>EP6LT CHPD</b>	SAE 0W20	955535/01	QUARTZ FPW01

## Capacities

Fuel (L)	55
AdBlue™	N/A
Oil	3.5 L

<sup>1</sup> non-factory fitted hook

<sup>2</sup> factory fitted hook

## Wheels and Tires

### Tightening Torques

**⚠ WARNING**

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Depending on the wheel rim material, two different bolts are available.



Tightening torque for steel wheel rims is 115 Nm.

Use the correct wheel bolts for the respective wheel rims.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

## CUSTOMER INFORMATION

### Declaration Of Conformity

#### TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS

This vehicle has systems that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 by the United Kingdom.

The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

[https://public-service-box.opel.com/OVddb/OV/en\\_GB/index.html](https://public-service-box.opel.com/OVddb/OV/en_GB/index.html)

Importer is Opel Automobile GmbH, Bahnhofspatz, 65423 Ruesselsheim am Main, Germany.

#### BTA MODULE

Magneti Marelli S.p.A.  
Viale A. Borletti 61/63, 20011 Corbetta, Italy

Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (dBm)
<b>880 -915</b>	33
<b>1710 - 1785</b>	24
<b>1850 -1910</b>	24
<b>1920 - 1980</b>	24
<b>2500 - 2570</b>	23

#### ANTENNA MODULE

Laird  
Daimlerring 31, 31135 Hildesheim, Germany  
Operation frequency: N/A  
Maximum output: N/A

#### RADIO REMOTE CONTROL TRANSMITTER

Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co.  
KG Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany  
Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz  
Maximum output: 10 dBm

#### RADIO REMOTE CONTROL RECEIVER

Delphi European, Middle Eastern & African Regional Offices Customer Technology  
Center Avenue de Luxembourg, L-4940 Bascharage, G.D. of Luxembourg  
Operation frequency: 119.0 - 128.6 kHz  
Maximum output: 16dBµA/m @ 10m

#### ELECTRONIC KEY TRANSMITTER

Valeo  
43 Rue Bayen, 75017 Paris, France  
Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz  
Maximum output: 10 dBm

#### IMMOBILIZER

KOSTAL of America, Inc.  
350 Stephenson Hwy, Troy MI 48083, USA  
Operation frequency: 125 kHz  
Maximum output: 5 dBµA/m at 10m

#### ICASA type approval numbers

List of all Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) type approval numbers:  
TA-2016/121, TA-2016/3261

TA-2017/2387, TA-2017/2745  
 TA-2013/430, TA-2017/1106  
 TA-2016/929, TA-2017/3180

## REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorization and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals. Visit [www.opel.com/reach](http://www.opel.com/reach) for further information and for access to the Article 33 communication.

## Software update

The Infotainment system can download and install selected software updates over a wireless connection.

### NOTE

The availability of these over-the-air vehicle software updates varies by vehicle and country. Find more information on our website.

## Remote device management and remote software and firmware updates

As an integral part of the service related to the performance of subscribed connected service contracts, necessary device management and necessary software and firmware updates related to the software and firmware for the named connected service will be performed remotely, in particular by using over-the-air technology.

For this, a secure radio network connection between the vehicle and the device management server will be established when ignition is switched on and a mobile network is available.

Depending on the equipment of the vehicle, connection configuration must be set to **Connected vehicle** to allow the establishment of the radio network connection.

Irrespective of a valid connected service subscription, remote product security or product safety related device management and software and firmware updates will be performed when the processing is necessary for the compliance with a legal obligation

to which the manufacturer is subject (e.g. applicable product liability law, emergency call regulation) or when the processing is necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the respective vehicle users and passengers. The establishment of a secure radio network connection and the related remote updates are not affected by privacy settings and will be performed in principal after an initiation by the vehicle user following a respective notification.

The system is able to notify receipt of an update as soon as it is connected to an exterior Wi-Fi network or a mobile network. Large updates are downloaded only via the Wi-Fi network. The availability of an update is notified on the Infotainment screen at the end of a trip with an option of immediate installation or postponement of installation.

The installation time is variable and can take several minutes with a maximum of about 30 minutes. A notification will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update. Updates can be checked manually via the Infotainment screen. Follow the onscreen prompts in the respective menu.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

**i NOTE**

Steps for downloading and installing updates may vary by vehicle.

For safety reasons and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the installation must be carried out with the ignition on without starting the engine. The installation cannot be carried out in the following cases:

- engine running
- emergency call in progress
- insufficient vehicle battery charge
- charging the vehicle's high voltage battery

**i NOTE**

During the installation process, the vehicle may not be operational.

If the update has failed, seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Registered trademarks

### Apple Inc.

Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.

App Store® and iTunes Store® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod touch®, iPod nano®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

### Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

DivX, LLC DivX® and DivX Certified® are registered trademarks of DivX, LLC.

### Google Inc.

Android™ and Google Play™ Store are trademarks of Google Inc.

### Velcro Companies

Velcro® is a registered trademark of Velcro Companies.

## Vehicle Data Recording And Privacy

### Emergency call data recording and privacy

#### Data processing

All processing of personal information by the emergency call function complies with the framework for protection of personal information establish-

ed by regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with article 6.1, paragraph d) of regulation 2016/679.

The processing of personal information is strictly limited to the requirements of the emergency call function used with the European emergency call number. The emergency call function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a time-stamped log file recording technical data related to the system's operation. The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centers designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the emergency number.

#### Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the

system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operation mode. The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.

When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

### Access to data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at [privacyrights@mpsa.com](mailto:privacyrights@mpsa.com). For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on our website.

### Event Data Recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received by vehicle sensors, for example, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant owner's manual or

in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

### Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, for example:

- vehicle status information (e.g. speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, "seat belts fastened" display)
- ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor)

As a rule such data is transient and is not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Often control units include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.

Depending on technical equipment levels, the data stored is as follows:

- system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tire pressure, battery status)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

- faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
- information on events damaging the vehicle
- for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high-voltage battery, estimated range

In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.

When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used where necessary. Staff working for the service network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle. The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures. Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle. The operating data read documents the technical condition of the vehicle or individu-

al components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement. This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability. The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.

Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs or at your request.

### Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed or reset at any time. Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- seat and steering wheel position settings
- chassis and air conditioning settings
- custom settings such as interior lighting

You can input your own data in the infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features. Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
- address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system
- input destinations
- data on the use of online services

This data for comfort and infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.

This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

### Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so

that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / infotainment system. Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

### Online services

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of

a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

### Proprietary services

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection, processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of a legally prescribed emergency communication system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent. You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire

radio network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

### Onboard fuel consumption meter (OBFCM)

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.

In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance traveled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable).

These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emission of the new vehicles in an anonymized and aggregated way.

The collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose can be refused. This can be done by contacting Customer Care Center (contact details available on brand website).

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

### Third party services

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question.

The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.

Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third party services provided by the service provider in question.

### In case of an accident

This vehicle is fitted with an event data recorder. This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision. In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, the system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- any deployment of a restraint system (airbag, seat belt, etc)

- the status of all seat belts (fastened / unfastened)
- the contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver
- the speed of the vehicle
- the status of some driving and driver assistance systems.

The following are not recorded:

- data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event
- personal data on the driver and any other occupants
- the geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event.

The reading of data recorded by the event data recorder requires both:

- access to the interior of the vehicle or to the event data recorder
- special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer Bosch.

Aside from the vehicle manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyze the event.

### Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as immobilizer. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting. RFID technology in Opel vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Opel system containing personal information.

### Protecting measures against cyber attacks

Depending to the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view . This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.

When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's infrastructures by "Over-The-Air" connectivity. Those log files

are analyzed by the Manufacturer's Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronic components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.

The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cybersecurity measures settled inside vehicles.

It also directly participates to the securitization of your vehicle's connectivity and allows the correct performance of online services activated on your vehicle. Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis (see below).

### **Applying legal Obligations and respective requirements**

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.

Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independently of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

### **eCall - Emergency Call**

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.

This function, where operational, is provided through the Public Emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you bought your vehicle or where it is registered.

In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to '112' inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel). This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident ; it allows the Public Emergency Services to assess and manage your situation. The Public Emergency Services will

act according to local legislation and its own operating procedures. Inside Europe, the 112- based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.

According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018.

The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

### **OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter**

This SERVICE is provided for 15 years after the vehicle is firstly put into circulation.

In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

distance traveled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable).

These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymized and aggregated way.

As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting Customer Care Center (contact information available on the brand website available for your country).

### **SLI - Speed Limit Information**

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.

Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June

2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.

As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/ expressways/dual carriageways).

SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions don't permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current

position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.

As required by the "GSR V2 Regulations", this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle's settings available from the central touch screen.

This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The-Air data transmission of current vehicle's position for accurate speed limit detection.

Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

## **Mileage disclosure to Car-Pass association**

### **(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)**

This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th November 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020). It is provided lifetime, as long as Car-Pass association requests the data.

It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by Belgian authorities to collect and control this data.

This mileage is collected over-the-air by Stellantis if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to Car-Pass association, upon request of this organism.

For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (<https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy>).

### **Data Use - Product Quality Improvement**

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by STELLANTIS AUTO SAS as a car maker, your Vehicle Data (as

defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the geolocation of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products.

Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

### **European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis**

The Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles (“Privacy Policy”) applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorized by a Customer to access and use the connected services.

This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help you understand better how we handle your information. In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal

Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy). If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: [dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com](mailto:dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com). This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.

It is also available at the following link: <https://connected-vehicles-privacy.stellantis.com/>

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10



# INDEX

- A**
- Access to engine compartment . . . 217
  - Accessories and vehicle modifications . . . . . 210
  - Active emergency braking . . . . . 127
  - Active Emergency Braking (AEB) . 161
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) . . . 155
  - ADAS . . . . . 152
  - Adding Coolant Fluid . . . . . 220
  - Adding Washer Fluid . . . . . 220
  - Adjusting seat . . . . . 30
  - Adjusting the air distribution . . . . . 89
  - Adjusting the air flow . . . . . 89
  - Adjusting the seat angle . . . . . 29
  - Adjusting the time . . . . . 118
  - Advanced driving assistance system . . . . . 152
  - Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . 227
  - Air intake . . . . . 90
  - Airbag . . . . . 36
  - Airbag deactivation . . . . . 38
  - Allowed Tire and Rim Sizes . . . . . 231
  - Anti-theft alarm system . . . . . 13
  - Antifreeze Coolant . . . . . 217
  - Antilock brake system (ABS) . . . . 169
  - Assist and SOS . . . . . 193
  - Assistance call . . . . . 194
  - Audio streaming (Bluetooth) . . . . 105
  - Automatic crash notification . . . . 194
  - Automatic light control . . . . . 55
  - Automatic Park Assist . . . . . 178
  - Automatic transmission . . . . . 127
  - Automatic transmission PHEV . . . 128
- B**
- Battery discharge protection . . . . . 59
  - Battery Preconditioning . . . . . 144
  - Blind . . . . . 59
  - Bodywork-Exterior Care . . . . . 233
  - Brake and clutch fluids . . . . . 217
  - Brake assist . . . . . 125
  - Brake fluid . . . . . 215
  - Braking . . . . . 125, 126
  - Bulb replacement . . . . . 227
- C**
- Cabin Air Filter . . . . . 226
  - Center console storage . . . . . 60
  - Central locking system . . . . . 9
  - Changing a wheel . . . . . 198
  - Charging . . . . . 139
  - Charging cable . . . . . 136
  - Charging status . . . . . 143
  - Charging types . . . . . 136
  - Checking Brake Fluid . . . . . 221
  - Checking Oil Level . . . . . 219
  - Checking Fluids Level . . . . . 213
- D**
- Child lock . . . . . 11
  - Child locks . . . . . 11
  - Child restraint installation locations . . . . . 42
  - Child restraints . . . . . 40
  - Child seats, ISOFIX . . . . . 48
  - Cluster . . . . . 67, 91
  - Comfort entry function** . . . . . 31
  - Compartment Filter . . . . . 227
  - Connectivity . . . . . 112
  - Controls . . . . . 50
  - Curtain airbag system . . . . . 38
  - Customer Information . . . . . i, 246
  - Customization . . . . . 101
- D**
- Date (setting) . . . . . 118
  - Daytime running lights . . . . . 54
  - Decals . . . . . 234
  - Declaration of conformity . . . . . 246
  - Diagnosis, vehicle . . . . . 84
  - Display operation . . . . . 91
  - Display, head-up . . . . . 30
  - Doors . . . . . 17
  - Driving modes . . . . . 130
  - Driving positions (storing)
    - Storing driving positions . . . . . 30

<b>E</b>			
eCall - Emergency Call	253	Fitting roof bars	146
ECO mode	84	Fog lights, rear	55
Electronic climate control system	86	Folding mirrors	24
Electronic key system	8	Folding the backrest	33
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	168	Forward Collision Warning (FCW)	166
Emergency call	193, 194	Frequency (radio)	104
Emergency call data recording and privacy	248	Front airbag system	37
End-of-life vehicle Disposal	211	Front seats	27
Energy recovery	125, 126	Front storage	60
Engine Air Filter	227	Fuel	132
Engine Compartment	217	Fuel consumption	134
Engine coolant	215	Fuel for petrol engines	132
Engine coolant temperature gauge	69	Fuel gauge	69
Engine data	241	Fuses	227
Engine exhaust	131	<b>G</b>	
Engine identification	238	Gauges	69
Engine oil	216	General information	135, 147, 210
Engine Oil	213	Glovebox	61
Engine Oil Filter	226	Guide Me Home	59
Engine Oil Level Monitor	70	<b>H</b>	
Engine Washing	225	Hazard warning flashers	55
Entry lighting	58	Hazard Warning Lights	193
Event Data Recorders	249	Head restraints	25
Exterior lights	53	Head restraints, rear	26
Exterior mirrors	24	Head-up display	91
<b>F</b>		Headlight Height Adjustment	53
First aid kit	65	Headlight, flash	54
		Headlight, high beam	53
		Headlight, light switch	53
		Headlights	54
		Headlights when driving abroad	54
		Heated and ventilated seats	31
		Heated rear window	23
		Heated Seats	31
		Heated windshield	23
		Heating	23
		Heating, programmable	89
		High beam	53
		High Gloss Paint	234
		High voltage battery	138
		Horn	51
		<b>I</b>	
		Identification plate	238
		Immobilizer	15
		Infotainment screen	91
		Instrument panel illumination control	58
		Instrument panel overview	66
		Interior and Upholstery	235
		Interior care	235
		Interior lighting	58
		Interior mirrors	24
		ISOFIX mountings	44
		<b>J</b>	
		Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing	196
		Jump starting	203

## K

Keys ..... 8

## L

Lane Positioning Assist (LPA) ... 173

Lashing eyes ..... 64

Light switch ..... 53

Lights, parking ..... 55

Load reduction mode ..... 147

Loading ..... 146

Locking, automatic ..... 9

## M

Maintenance And Vehicle Care .i, 210

Manual seat adjustment ..... 27

Massage ..... 32

Massage multi-point ..... 32

Menu ..... 95

Mirrors ..... 25

Mirrors, interior ..... 25

Multimedia System ..... 107

## O

Odometer ..... 68

Opel Connect ..... 194

## P

Panoramic view system ..... 180

Parking assist ..... 25

Parking lights ..... 55

Pedals ..... 120

Periodic checks ..... 212

## Post Collision Braking

System (PCBS) ..... 167

Power button ..... 51

Power seat adjustment ..... 29

Power steering ..... 119

Power windows ..... 21

Profiles ..... 97, 100

Programmable charging ..... 142

Propulsion Type ..... 6

## R

Radio ..... 104

Radio Frequency

Identification (RFID) ..... 15, 252

Radio remote control ..... 8

REACH ..... 247

Rear camera ..... 180

Rear cross traffic alert ..... 185

Rear floor storage cover ..... 65

Rear fog light ..... 55

Rear window wiper and washer ... 52

Recommended Fluids,

Lubricants, and Parts ..... 216

Refueling ..... 133

Regenerative braking

(deceleration by engine

braking) ..... 125, 126

Registered trademarks ..... 248

Roadside assistance ..... 194

Roof bars ..... 146

## S

Scheduled Servicing ..... 212

Seat belt reminder ..... 36

Seat belts ..... 34

Seat Belts Maintenance ..... 235

Seat position ..... 27

Seats, heated ..... 31

Selector ..... 128

Semi-automatic lane changing ... 176

Service display ..... 70

Service information ..... 212

Side airbag system ..... 37

Sidelights ..... 54

Software update ..... 247

Spare Wheel ..... 197

Speed Limiter ..... 154

Speedometer ..... 69

Starting the engine ..... 119

Station, radio ..... 104

Steering ..... 50

Steering wheel adjustment ..... 50

Steering wheel controls ..... 50

Stop-start system ..... 122

Storage ..... 60

Storage compartments ..... 60

Sunroof, panoramic ..... 59

## T

Tail lights ..... 53

Tailgate ..... 17

Three-point seat belt ..... 47

Time (setting) . . . . .	118
Tire chains . . . . .	231
Tire deflation detection system . .	230
Tire Markings / Designations . . . .	228
Tire pressure . . . . .	229
Tire Repair Toolkit . . . . .	200
Tires and Wheels . . . . .	227
Tow bar . . . . .	149
Towed loads . . . . .	239
Towing . . . . .	148, 207
Towing another vehicle . . . . .	208
Towing equipment . . . . .	149
Towing the vehicle . . . . .	207
Trailer stability assist . . . . .	151
Trailer towing . . . . .	147
Tread depth . . . . .	230
Turn lights . . . . .	54

## U

Updating the system . . . . .	101
Updating the time . . . . .	118
USB sockets . . . . .	63

## V

Vauxhall Connect . . . . .	194
Vehicle Data Recording And Privacy . . . . .	248
Vehicle identification number . . . .	238
Vehicle locator lighting . . . . .	59
Vehicle Maintenance . . . . .	225
Vehicle messages . . . . .	85
Vehicle Storage . . . . .	232

Very Cold Climate Covers . . . . .	211
------------------------------------	-----

## W

Warning and indicators light . . . . .	83
Warning triangle . . . . .	65
Warning Triangle Kit . . . . .	195
Washer fluid . . . . .	216
Washer Fluid . . . . .	215
Weights . . . . .	239
Wheel changing toolkit . . . . .	196
Wheel covers . . . . .	231
Wheel Installation . . . . .	199
Wheel removal . . . . .	197
Windows . . . . .	21
Windshield . . . . .	22
Windshield wiper and washer . . . .	51
Winter tires . . . . .	229
Wiper Blade Replacement . . . . .	225

# Driving innovation for tomorrow.



For over 50 years, **TotalEnergies** and **Stellantis** have shared a common vision of performance, innovation, and mobility for the future.

This long-standing partnership is built on close technical collaboration, from product design to after-sales service across official networks. By combining their expertise, the two companies have developed cutting-edge lubrication technologies tailored to the evolving needs of Opel powertrains.

The co-branded **Quartz Mopar** and **Quartz EV3R Mopar** ranges reflect this shared expertise. Specifically designed and **approved by Opel**, they include **high-performance engine oils** covering every Opel powertrain. Each formulation helps keep engines clean, reduce wear, and support fuel efficiency, ensuring smooth operation mile after mile, even under the most demanding conditions.

We're taking innovation further with **Quartz EV3R Mopar**, which introduces the **3R approach (Reduce, Reuse, Regenerate)** using regenerated base oils and a recyclable bottle, while delivering the same performance as standard Quartz oils, with a lower impact compared to our conventional products.

Your authorized Opel repairer will recommend the right oil for your model and service schedule. Available and **recommended within Opel authorized after-sales networks**, Quartz Mopar offers confidence, durability, and proven technology backed by decades of partnership.

**QUARTZ**  
ENGINE OIL



O P E L recommends **TotalEnergies**



O P E L



**TotalEnergies**

OFFICIAL PARTNERS //



**[www.opel.com](http://www.opel.com)**

Copyright by Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim, Germany.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Opel Automobile GmbH reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information in this publication as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: May 2026, Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

OGRANBO2605en-1

